

An Introduction to Middle Dutch

Colette M. van Kerckvoorde

An Introduction to Middle Dutch

Mouton de Gruyter
Berlin · New York 1993

Mouton de Gruyter (formerly Mouton, The Hague)
is a division of Walter de Gruyter & Co., Berlin.

- ∞ Printed on acid-free paper which falls within the guidelines of the
ANSI to ensure permanence and durability.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Van Kerckvoorde, Colette Marie-Christine Etienne.
An introduction to Middle Dutch / Colette M. van
Kerckvoorde.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 3-11-013535-3 (acid-free paper)
1. Dutch language—To 1500. 2. Dutch language—
Textbooks for foreign speakers—English. I. Title.
PF772.V36 1993
439.3'17—dc20 92-38734
CIP

Die Deutsche Bibliothek — Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Van Kerckvoorde, Colette M.:
An introduction to Middle Dutch / Colette M. van Kerck-
voorde. — Berlin ; New York : Mouton de Gruyter, 1993
ISBN 3-11-013535-3

© Copyright 1992 by Walter de Gruyter & Co., D-1000 Berlin 30.

All rights reserved, including those of translation into foreign languages. No part of this book
may be reproduced in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photo-
copy, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing
from the publisher.

Printing: Gerike GmbH, Berlin. — Binding: Lüderitz & Bauer, Berlin. —
Printed in Germany.

Acknowledgments

I would like to express my gratitude to the following persons and institutions:

Professor W. P. Lehmann of the University of Texas at Austin for his continuing advice and encouragement; Professor E. A. Ebbinghaus of Bellefonte, Pennsylvania who helped me at various stages of the manuscript; Professor S. L. Cocalis of the University of Massachusetts at Amherst for her invaluable moral support and for proofreading the manuscript; and Simon's Rock College of Bard in Great Barrington, Massachusetts, whose financial assistance enabled me to conduct research in Europe and the United States. This book is dedicated to Valérie, Michel, and Dominique.

Contents

Acknowledgments	v
List of abbreviations	xii
Introduction	1
Chapter 1 Phonological introduction	5
1.1. Consonants	5
1.2. Semivowels	6
1.3. Vowels in stressed syllables	6
1.4. Vowels in unstressed syllables	8
1.5. Syllable structure	8
1.6. Stress	9
1.7. Devoicing of voiced consonants	9
1.8. Vowel lengthening in open syllables	9
1.9. Orthography	10
1.10. Assimilation	13
1.11. Proclitics and enclitics	14
1.12. Epenthetic <i>d</i>	17
1.13. <i>ou</i> + dental stop	17
Chapter 2 <i>Floris ende Blancefloer</i> [Floris and Blancefloer]	18
2.1. Reading and textual analysis	18
2.2. Translation	21
2.3. Nouns: Introduction	22
2.4. Strong masculine and neuter nouns	23
Chapter 3 <i>Vanden Levene ons Heren</i> [The Life of Our Lord]	25
3.1. Reading and textual analysis	25
3.2. Translation	29
3.3. Simple sentence structure	29
3.4. The nominative and the accusative case	30
3.5. Strong feminine nouns	31
3.6. The simple demonstrative <i>die</i> and the definite article	32
3.7. The indefinite article	33

viii *Table of contents*

Chapter 4	Hendrik van Veldeke	34
4.1.	Reading and textual analysis	34
4.2.	Simple declarative sentences	37
4.3.	Expletive words	37
4.4.	Weak masculine and neuter nouns	38
Chapter 5	<i>Der Leken Spieghel</i> [Laymen's Mirror]	40
5.1.	Reading and textual analysis	40
5.2.	The subject	42
5.3.	The dative case	44
5.4.	Weak feminine nouns	46
5.5.	The demonstratives <i>dese</i> and <i>ghene</i> 'this'	46
Chapter 6	<i>Esmoreit</i>	48
6.1.	Reading and textual analysis	48
6.2.	Prepositional phrases and pronominal adverbs	51
6.3.	Minor noun declensions	52
6.4.	Proper names	53
6.5.	Diminutive formation	53
Chapter 7	Anthonis de Roovere (I)	54
7.1.	Reading and textual analysis	54
7.2.	Middle Dutch adjectives	56
7.3.	Adjectives used as nouns	59
7.4.	<i>al</i> 'each, every, all'	59
Chapter 8	<i>Vanden Vos Reynaerde</i> [Reynard the Fox] (I)	61
8.1.	Reading and textual analysis	61
8.2.	Compound Sentences	64
8.3.	Personal pronouns: First and second person	65
8.4.	Possessive adjectives and pronouns: First and second person	67
8.5.	<i>elc</i> 'each, everyone, all'	67
Chapter 9	<i>Van Sente Brandane</i> [Saint Brendan]	69
9.1.	Reading and textual analysis	69
9.2.	Complex sentences I	72
9.3.	Personal pronouns: Third person	75
9.4.	The indefinite pronoun <i>men</i> 'one'	78
9.5.	Possessive adjectives and pronouns: Third person	79
9.6.	Reflexive pronouns	79
9.7.	The genitive case	80

Chapter 10 Jan van Ruusbroec (I)	84
10.1. Reading and textual analysis	84
10.2. Complex sentences II: Conditional and concessive clauses	88
10.3. Verbs: Introduction	89
10.4. The imperative	90
Chapter 11 Anthonis de Roovere (II)	92
11.1. Reading and textual analysis	92
11.2. Sentence negation	95
11.3. Indicative present of weak and strong verbs	98
11.4. Indicative present of irregular verbs	99
Chapter 12 <i>Vanden Vos Reynaerde</i> [Reynard the Fox] (II)	101
12.1. Reading and textual analysis	101
12.2. The Indo-European languages	103
12.3. Interrogative sentences	106
12.4. Indicative preterit of weak verbs	108
12.5. Past participles of weak verbs	110
12.6. <i>segghen</i> 'to say' and <i>leggghen</i> 'to lay, put'	110
12.7. Separable-prefix verbs	111
Chapter 13 <i>Walewein</i>	113
13.1. Reading and textual analysis	113
13.2. The Germanic languages	116
13.3. Irregular weak verbs	118
Chapter 14 <i>Ferguut</i> (I)	120
14.1. Reading and textual analysis	120
14.2. The Germanic consonant shift	123
14.3. Introduction to the indicative preterit tense and past participles of strong verbs	125
14.4. Indicative preterit and past participles of strong verbs: Classes I - III	127
Chapter 15 Dirc Potter	131
15.1. Reading and textual analysis	131
15.2. The Franks, the Frisians, and the Saxons	134
15.3. Indicative preterit and past participles of strong verbs: Classes IV - VI	135

x *Table of contents*

Chapter 16	<i>Karel ende Elegast</i> [Charles and Elegast]	138
16.1.	Reading and textual analysis	138
16.2.	Indicative preterit and past participles of strong verbs Class VII	141
16.3.	Review: Survey of the vowel gradation pattern of strong verbs	142
16.4.	Compound tenses I: The present perfect and the past perfect tense	142
16.5.	<i>sijn</i> 'to be'	144
16.6.	<i>doen</i> 'to do'	144
16.7.	The declined infinitive (the gerund)	145
Chapter 17	<i>Ferguut</i> (II)	146
17.1.	Reading and textual analysis	146
17.2.	The origin of the language border in the South	149
17.3.	Preterit-present verbs	149
17.4.	<i>willen</i> 'to want, wish'	151
17.5.	The future tense	151
Chapter 18	Beatrijs van Nazareth	152
18.1.	Reading and textual analysis	152
18.2.	Social and economical changes during the High Middle Ages	154
18.3.	Middle Dutch dialects	155
18.4.	The comparative and superlative of adjectives	158
18.5.	Adverbs	160
Chapter 19	Sister Bertken	161
19.1.	Reading and textual analysis	161
19.2.	Temporal demarcations in the history of the Dutch language	166
19.3.	The passive	168
19.4.	The present participle	169
19.5.	The use of the present and past participles as attributive adjectives	170
Chapter 20	Jan van Ruusbroec (II)	171
20.1.	Reading and textual analysis	171
20.2.	The oldest Dutch sentence	174
20.3.	The Wachtendonck psaltery	174
20.4.	Relative clauses and relative pronouns	175

Chapter 21 <i>Beatrijs</i>	180
21.1. Reading and textual analysis	180
21.2. The influence of French	183
21.3. The subjunctive	184
Chapter 22 Hadewijch	189
22.1. Reading and textual analysis	189
22.2. Numerals	192
Glossary	194
Bibliography	209
Bibliography of Middle Dutch texts	218
Index	220

List of abbreviations

acc./A	accusative	phr.	phrase
adj.	adjective	pl.	plural
adv.	adverb	poss.	possessive
art.	article	pp.	passive participle
cl.	clitic	prep.	preposition, prepositional
comp.	comparative	pres. p.	present participle
conj.	conjunction	pres.	present tense
dat./D	dative	pret.	preterit tense
def.	definite	pron.	pronoun, pronominal
dem.	demonstrative	rel.	relative
Eng.	English	sg.	singular
f.	feminine	Skt.	Sanskrit
Fr.	French	subj. I	subjunctive I
gen./G	genitive	subj. II	subjunctive II
ger.	gerund	superl.	superlative
Gmc.	Germanic	*	hypothetical form
Goth.	Gothic	1st	first person
IE	Indo-European	2nd	second person
impv.	imperative	3rd	third person
ind.	indicative		
indef.	indefinite		
inf.	infinitive		
interj.	interjection		
interrog.	interrogative		
irr.	irregular		
Lat.	Latin		
m.	masculine		
MDu.	Middle Dutch		
neg.	negative		
nom./N	nominative		
nt.	neuter		
num.	numeral		
pass.	passive voice		
pers.	personal		

Introduction

Middle Dutch is the language that was spoken between approximately the second half of the twelfth and the beginning of the sixteenth century in the duchies of Limburg and Brabant, and in the counties of Flanders and Holland. In this book, I am using “Holland” in the meaning of the medieval county and the later provinces of North and South Holland in the Kingdom of the Netherlands. “Flemish” refers to the dialects spoken in the medieval region of Flanders, in which the cities of Bruges, Ypres, Ghent, and Courtray are located. The term “Middle Dutch” does not refer to one specific language, rather it is to be understood as a collective designation for several dialects spoken over several centuries. Medieval authors called their own language *Dietsch* or *Duutsch*. One can distinguish four major dialect groups of Middle Dutch: (a) Flemish, which was spoken in the region of Flanders, and Zeeuws, spoken in Zeeland; (b) Brabantic, used in the area of Brussels, Louvain, Antwerp, Mechlin, and Breda; (c) Hollandic, the dialect of the county of Holland; and (d) Limburgic, the language used in the eastern part of the Middle Dutch territory. The first three dialect groups may be referred to as West Franconian, while Limburgic is known as East Franconian.

Traditionally, the history of the Dutch language is divided into three major periods. The Old Dutch period, which is also called the Old Low Franconian period, comprises the dialects spoken in the above mentioned regions approximately until the second half of the twelfth century. Very few textual documents in the vernacular have come down to us from the oldest stages of Dutch. The Middle Dutch period lasted from 1160-1170 until the beginning of the sixteenth century. A great many manuscripts from this time are available. Modern Dutch is said to start in the beginning of the sixteenth century. I have listed the temporary demarcations of the history of the Dutch language as guidelines only. Linguistic changes occur gradually, and as a consequence, it may be difficult in some instances to determine whether a given text is still Middle Dutch or is already Modern Dutch.

Linguistic remnants of the Old Dutch or Old Low Franconian period are scarce and offer no basis for a detailed grammatical description of the language. The earliest extant records are the *Malbergse Glossen* [Glosses of Malberg], which accompany the *Lex Salica* [Salian Law] of the Low Franks. These are Germanic words which explain and/or translate the Latin text. Another limited source of information is the *Wachtendonckse Psalmen* [Wachtendonck Psalter] (See 20.3) from the ninth century. These psalm fragments originate in the eastern part of the Franconian territory. In addition to these sources, one sentence in Old Flemish was discovered on the back

2 Introduction

cover of an English manuscript in Great Britain. This sentence is known as the "probatio pennae", or the testing of the pen (See 20.2), as it was written down to break in a new pen. Finally, there are Dutch words, place names, and personal names found in Latin texts and charters. Thus, unlike English and German, Dutch does not have any significant records in the vernacular written prior to the late twelfth century.

The oldest available Middle Dutch literary document is a poem by Hendrik van Veldeke, a nobleman from Limburg. It dates from the years between 1160 and 1170 and is a hagiography entitled *Sint Servaes Legende* [The Legend of Saint Servatius]. Its importance to Middle Dutch literature lies primarily in the fact that it is the earliest Dutch text which is accessible to the twentieth-century reader. As a work of art it is commonly said not to be very remarkable. Veldeke's principal work, the *Eneit*, is written in Middle High German.

Literary texts of the thirteenth to the fifteenth century are abundant and predominantly of Flemish and Brabantic (i.e. southern) origin. Thirteenth-century texts are often Flemish, e.g. the well-known *Karel ende Elegast* [Charles and Elegast], *Ferguut*, the *Beatrijs*-legend, and *Vanden Vos Reynaerde* [Reynard the Fox] are all written in Flemish. One of the most influential mystics, Hadewijch, wrote in the dialect of Brabant, however. During the fourteenth century there was a marked shift towards the predominance of the dialect of Brabant, e.g. Jan van Boendale and the renowned mystic Jan van Ruusbroec were from Brabant, although Jan Praet was a Fleming. The four famous *Abele Spelen*, or "serious secular dramas", were written in a dialect of Brabant. These plays are considered to be the first four specimens of non-comedic secular drama in European literature. In the fifteenth century, Brabant continued to dominate the literary scene: the literature of this era is marked by the development of the *Rederijkerskamers* or Chambers of Rhetoric, which were organized very much like trade guilds. Members of these Chambers produced a large amount of writing, which often revealed a strong preoccupation with form and technique. Frequently, the authors of these works wrote anonymously, although one knows to which Chamber they belonged. The two best-known plays written by members of the Chambers of Rhetoric are *Elckerlijc* [Everyman] and *Marieken van Nieuweghen* [Mary of Nijmegen]. Both were very popular and originated from guilds in Brabant. In general, the literature of the fifteenth century does not reach the same niveau as many of the thirteenth- and fourteenth-century literary texts. Beginning with the late thirteenth century, one also finds some important writers in the North of the Middle Dutch territory. (Note that texts and authors representing each of these periods and dialects have been selected as examples. More detailed information is provided in the chapters in which they occur.)

It is not surprising that the literary activity during the Middle Ages flourished in the South of the Dutch-speaking territory. In fact, throughout

the Middle Ages, the North remained in cultural and economical isolation. During the twelfth, thirteenth, and fourteenth centuries, Bruges in Flanders was one of the leading Northern European cities. The prosperity of such Flemish cities as Damme, Ypres, and Ghent testify to the fact that the county was very active at the time. By the end of the fifteenth century, the silting up of the Zwin, the inlet of the North Sea on which Bruges stood, had resulted in the decline of the city. Gradually Antwerp rose to prominence as an international seaport. Foreign tradehouses were transferred to Antwerp, and soon it became the major financial center north of the Alps. In 1576 religious uprisings broke out, and the Spanish rule partially destroyed Antwerp, slaughtering approximately 6,000 citizens in what came to be known as the "Spanish Fury". Following this, many members of the upper class fled to the North, especially to Amsterdam. The city of Antwerp rapidly lost its commercial importance, especially after the closing of the Schelde estuary to foreign shipping. As Antwerp's prominence waned, Amsterdam's commercial activity and significance rapidly increased. This led to the growing importance of the dialect of the province of Holland, on which the present-day standard language *Algemeen Beschaafd Nederlands* = ABN "General Cultivated Dutch" is based. The dialect of Holland, however, was strongly influenced by the language of the southern territories, especially by the dialect of Brabant. Many of the immigrants who had fled from the South were prominent citizens who kept their influential positions in exile. Their language was considered worthy of imitation in the North, and hence the southern dialects left a definite stamp on the shaping of the standard modern language.

Given the fact that the southern provinces produced most of the literature during the Middle Ages, the study of Middle Dutch concentrates mostly on the Flemish and Brabantic dialects. In preparing this book, I am greatly indebted to the following Middle Dutch grammars: J. Franck, *Mittelniederländische Grammatik mit Lesestücken und Glossar* (1883); J. Goossens, *Historische Phonologie des Niederländischen* (1974); H. Le Roux and J.J. Le Roux, *Middelnederlandse grammatika* (1969); F.A. Stoett, *Middelnederlandsche spraakkunst: Syntaxis* (1923); T.C. van de Ketterij, *Grammaticale interpretatie van Middelnederlandse teksten* (1980); B. van den Berg, *Inleiding tot de Middelnederlandse syntaxis* (1971); M.J. van der Meer, *Historische Grammatik der niederländischen Sprache* (1927); W.L. van Helten, *Middelnederlandsche spraakkunst* (1887); A. van Loey, *Middelnederlandse spraakkunst* (1980a, 1980b); and A. van Loey (ed.), *Schönfelds historische grammatica van het Nederlands* (1970).

An Introduction to Middle Dutch is intended for students who are interested in the language as linguists as well as for those interested in the texts as literary scholars. Both have the same basic need: an understanding of the grammatical structures of the language. This work aims to provide a thorough introduction to Middle Dutch and is designed in such a way that it

4 Introduction

can be read without a previous background in historical linguistics. It can be used as a textbook for a graduate-level course, but it can also be used by scholars wanting to learn Middle Dutch on their own.

This textbook presents the grammar of Middle Dutch in a step-by-step progression over twenty-two chapters. As such, it is a departure from traditional handbooks, which contain a cursory section on grammar followed by reading selections in the target language. The Middle Dutch passages in the reading and textual analysis sections have been carefully selected to illustrate particular grammatical topics. Because this book also hopes to introduce the reader to Middle Dutch literature, excerpts from classical Middle Dutch texts, both in prose and in verse, have been selected, and some background information for each reading selection is provided. In every instance, the Middle Dutch text is printed exactly as it appears in the editions. Given the limited scope of this book, several masterpieces could not be included. Those readers interested in additional readings should turn to van Loey's (ed.) *Middelnerlands Leerboek* (1947), or to Verwijs' *Bloemlezing uit de Middelnerlandse Dichtkunst*, which was revised by C. C. De Bruin (1956-1958). A good anthology for non-literary documents is R. Willemyns's *Het niet-literaire Middelnerlands* (1979). The grammar sections all present two or three topics on the syntax, the morphology and/or the phonology of Middle Dutch. The emphasis has been placed on a synchronic presentation of the language. Sometimes it was necessary to introduce one topic over more than one chapter, e.g. the principal parts of strong verbs are spread over three subsequent chapters. Each example in the grammar section is accompanied by an English translation. I have, as often as possible, taken those examples from the reading excerpts in this book. Examples that are taken from such excerpts are accompanied by a reference to the chapter and the verse number where they occur. In the later chapters, I have also included some basic information on philological topics relevant to the history of the Dutch language. For example, the position of Dutch within the context of the Germanic languages is discussed in Chapter 13. Such paragraphs are intended for those readers who have no background in philology. They are chiefly designed to awaken the reader's interest in the direction of a more detailed description of the history of the language.

A complete glossary of every lexical item included in the twenty-one reading passages is provided. In case a more detailed dictionary is necessary, one should turn to Verdam's *Middelnerlandsch Handwoordenboek* (1929) or Pijnenburg's *Woordenboek Middelnerlands* (1984). A complete dictionary of Middle Dutch in nine volumes and two supplements is Verwijs and Verdam's *Middelnerlandsch Woordenboek*. (1885-1952). Note, however, that these dictionaries translate Middle Dutch entries into Modern Dutch.

Colette van Kerckvoorde

Lee, Massachusetts, August 1991

Chapter 1
Phonological introduction

It is generally assumed that medieval scribes wrote phonetically, i.e. their spelling mirrors their pronunciation to a great extent. While it is not always possible to ascertain the exact phonetic value of a given consonant or vowel, we are nevertheless able to provide a schematic representation of the sounds of Middle Dutch.

1.1. Consonants

Table 1 lists the consonants of Middle Dutch:

Table 1. The consonants of Middle Dutch

	labials	front	back
stops			
voiceless	p	t	k
voiced	b	d	[g]
fricatives			
voiceless	f	[s]	X , h
voiced	v	[z]	[ʒ]
nasals	m	[n]	[ŋ]
liquid			
continuant		l	
trilled		r	

In Middle Dutch [z] has not yet reached the status of a fully independent phoneme. It occurs as an allophone of [s] and is found only in the following environments: (a) in initial position: when preceding a vowel or w, e.g.

6 Chapter 1

soete 'sweet', *swerc* 'cloud'; (b) in medial position: between two vowels, e.g. *esel* 'donkey'; when following a nasal consonant or *l*, e.g. *onse* 'our', *alse* 'as, like';

The voiced stop [g] and the voiced fricative [ɣ] have complementary distribution: The stop follows a nasal consonant and also occurs intervocalically, provided the first vowel is short and stressed, e.g. *hangen* 'to hang', *segghen* 'to say'. The fricative [ɣ] appears in any other environment.

The velar nasal [ŋ] never occurs in word initial position. It is found exclusively in front of velar stops, e.g. *ghinc* 'went'. In other environments [n] occurs.

1.2. Semivowels

Middle Dutch has two semivowels: palatal *j* and labial *w*.

1.3. Vowels in stressed syllables

The vocalic system of Middle Dutch consists of short vowels, long vowels, and diphthongs. In this introduction, I am following the description of vowels in stressed syllables as presented in Van Loey (ed.) (1970) and Goossens (1974, 1980).

1.3.1. Short vowels

The short vowels can be arranged in a chart as in Table 2:

Table 2. The short vowels in stressed syllables

	front		back	
high	<i>i</i>		<i>ü</i>	
		<i>e</i>		<i>o</i>
low			<i>a</i>	

The short vowel system contains three levels of opening.

1.3.2. Long vowels

The long vowels can be arranged as in Table 3:

Table 3. The long vowels in stressed syllable

	<i>front</i>			<i>back</i>		
<i>high</i>	ī			[ū]		
		ē				ō
			ĕ	ø	ȳ	
<i>low</i>			ā			

The long vowel system contains four levels of opening. It is possible that *ē* and *ō* were diphthongs, realized as [eə] or [oə], while *ĕ* and *ȳ* were monophthongs.

1.3.3. Diphthongs

Table 4 shows the diphthongs of Middle Dutch:

Table 4. The diphthongs of Middle Dutch

	<i>front</i>		<i>back</i>	
<i>high</i>	ie	[üe]	oe	
<i>low</i>	ei	öü	ou	

It is not sure whether *ie*, [üe], and *oe* were diphthongs or long monophthongs. The long vowel [ū] and the diphthong [üe] have complementary distribution: [üe] occurs only in front of *r*, e.g. *puer* 'pure'; whereas [ū] is found in all other positions, e.g. *ute* 'out (of)'.

1.4. Vowels in unstressed syllables

Unstressed syllables usually contain the neutral vowel schwa, represented phonetically as ə. Schwa occurs in inflectional and derivational affixes. Because schwa is found only in weakly stressed syllables, it often disappears altogether. As a rule, it is dropped after stressed vowels and diphthongs, except after *i* and *ei*, e.g. *vaen* (< *vae* + *en*) 'to catch', but: *tiēn* 'to accuse', *screyen* 'to cry'. Strict rules for apocope and syncope cannot be provided, as forms with and without unstressed *e* exist side by side in the same manuscripts. The following instances of apocope and syncope are frequently observed in Middle Dutch texts.

(i) Syncope after a stressed syllable:

The tendency to syncope a schwa is especially strong if it occurs:

between *s* and *s*, e.g. *ons* (< *onses*) 'of us';

between two dental stops, e.g. *ghi wet* (< *wetet*) 'you know';

between a dental stop and *s*, e.g. *hets* (< *het* + *es*) 'it is'.

When two consecutive syllables contain an unstressed *e*, the first schwa is often syncopeated, provided the resulting consonant group can be pronounced without difficulty, e.g. *wi beiaechden* (< *beiagheden*) 'we hunted and caught'.

In a sequence of three weakly stressed syllables, the second schwa is frequently syncopeated, e.g. *si wandelden* (< *wandeleden*) 'they walked'.

(ii) Syncope before a stressed syllable

Syncope of a schwa before a stressed syllable may be found in the prefixes *be* and *ghe*, e.g. *bendich* (< *behendich*) 'skillful, agile', *gheten* (< *ghe* + *eten*) 'eaten'.

(iii) Apocope

In final position, a schwa is usually retained after a stressed syllable. However, if it occurs in a word with weak sentence stress, it may be apocopeated, e.g. *uut* 'out' (for *ute*), *als* 'as, when' (for *alse*).

1.5. Syllable structure

The distinction between closed and open syllables is important for the study of Middle Dutch phonology. An open syllable is a syllable which ends in a vowel, e.g. in *esel* 'donkey', the first syllable is open (*e-sel*). A closed syllable ends in a consonant, e.g. *man* 'man', *vrient* 'friend'.

1.6. Stress

Middle Dutch continues the Germanic pattern with the primary word stress on the first syllable of the stem for simplex words. For compounds, a distinction between nominal and verbal compounds should be made. The former have the primary stress on the first syllable, while the latter carry the stress on the verbal part of the compound. However, if the verb is derived from a noun, it keeps the nominal stress pattern. Most French loanwords retain the original foreign stress pattern. Below are some examples:

Simplex words, e.g. *man* 'man', *vrient* 'friend', *wijs* 'wise', *ziele* 'soul';

Nominal compounds, e.g. *ertrike* 'earth', *ionchere* 'young man', *knieghebede* 'prayer said on the knees'; Note that nominal compounds with the prefixes *be*, *ghe*, *er*, *her*, *ont*, *ver* do not carry the stress on the first syllable, e.g. *ghemac* 'satisfaction', *begeerte* 'desire'.

Verbal compounds, e.g. *verliesen* 'to lose', *ghelooeven* 'to believe', *bedrieghen* 'to deceive'. However *antwoorden* 'to answer', which is derived from a noun, has primary stress on the first syllable.

French loanwords, e.g. *surcoot* 'upper garment', *faliëren* 'to fail', *scorgie* 'whip', *foreest* 'forest';

1.7. Devoicing of voiced consonants

Voiced stops and fricatives become voiceless whenever they occur at the end of a word. In most instances, devoicing is reflected in the spelling. Thus one finds the following alternations in Middle Dutch:

[b] : [p], e.g. *hebben* 'to have' : *ic heb* (< *hebbe*) 'I have'

[d] : [t], e.g. *bidden* 'to pray' : *ic bat* 'I prayed'

[g] : [k], e.g. *si ginghen* 'they went' : *ic ginc* 'I went'

[v] : [f], e.g. *brieve* 'letters' : *brief* 'letter'

[ɣ] : [X], e.g. *dage* 'days' : *dach* 'day'

1.8. Vowel lengthening in open syllables

Short vowels in stressed syllables are lengthened if they occur in front of an intervocalic consonant, i.e. in an open syllable. A change in quality usually accompanies the vowel lengthening. The following vocalic alternations are very frequent in Middle Dutch texts: *a* > *ā*, e.g. *dach* 'day' : *dage* 'days'; *e* and *i* > *ē*, e.g. *wech* 'way, street' : *weghe* 'ways, streets'; *smit* 'smith' : *smede* 'smiths'; *o* > *ō*, e.g. *si comt* 'she comes' : *comen* 'to come'. It is not sure what the exact quality of the resulting lengthened vowel was. It is

conceivable that originally long \bar{e} and \bar{o} and lengthened \bar{e} and \bar{o} were pronounced differently, at least in some dialects. It is however certain that originally long \bar{a} and lengthened \bar{a} had completely coalesced.

Note that the absence of a long vowel in words such as *vallen* 'to fall' and *segghen* 'to say' is ascribed to the fact that the following consonants were pronounced long in an older stage of the language. Hence, the short vowels originally occurred in closed syllables (e.g. ODu. **fal-lon*) and were not lengthened.

1.9. Orthography

Middle Dutch does not have any standardized rules for spelling. As mentioned before, the term Middle Dutch comprises several dialects over a time span of approximately three centuries. Consequently, one finds quite a number of orthographic variations, which may even occur within one and the same text. The following observations frequently hold true.

1.9.1. Consonants

The spelling of most Middle Dutch consonants does not present any particular problems to English speakers. For the most part, scribes wrote phonetically, i.e. they wrote down what they heard and/or pronounced themselves. Although manuscripts use geminated spelling for consonants, it must be stressed that long consonants do not occur phonetically in Middle Dutch. The geminated spelling is used as a device to indicate that the preceding vowel is short, e.g. the phonetic transcription for *vallen* is [valən]. Table 5 shows the phonetic values of frequently attested graphemes for consonants:

Table 5. The phonetic value of graphemes for consonants

phonetic value	spelling
[p]	<i>p, pp</i> : <i>part</i> 'horse', <i>dapper</i> 'brave', <i>op</i> 'on'
[t]	<i>t, tt</i> : <i>tijt</i> 'time', <i>luttel</i> 'little', <i>hant</i> 'hand'
[k]	<i>c</i> ; <i>k</i> is used in front of <i>e</i> and <i>i</i> ; <i>ck</i> : <i>coninc</i> 'king', <i>kint</i> 'child', <i>trecken</i> 'to pull', <i>welck</i> 'which'
[b]	<i>b, bb</i> : <i>best</i> 'best', <i>hebben</i> 'to have'
[d]	<i>d, dd</i> : <i>dat</i> 'that', <i>hadde</i> 'had'

phonetic value	spelling
[g]	<i>ggh</i> ; <i>g</i> or <i>gh</i> when following a nasal: <i>engel</i> , <i>inghel</i> 'angel', <i>segghen</i> 'to say'
[f]	<i>f</i> , <i>ff</i> : <i>foreest</i> 'forest', <i>heffen</i> 'to lift', <i>brief</i> 'letter'
[s]	<i>s</i> , <i>ss</i> , <i>sch</i> : <i>osse</i> 'ox', <i>ors</i> 'horse', <i>vleesch</i> 'flesh, meat'
[h]	<i>h</i> : <i>hebben</i> 'to have'
[X]	<i>ch</i> : <i>lucht</i> 'air'
[v]	<i>u</i> , <i>v</i> ; <i>f</i> in front of a voiced consonant: <i>vader</i> 'father', <i>leuen</i> 'to live', <i>bliven</i> 'to remain', <i>liefde</i> 'love'
[z]	<i>s</i> , <i>z</i> : <i>sonder</i> 'without', <i>ziele</i> 'soul', <i>dese</i> 'this'
[ɣ]	<i>g</i> , <i>gh</i> : <i>geest</i> 'spirit', <i>gheven</i> 'to give', <i>oghe</i> 'eye'
[m]	<i>m</i> , <i>mm</i> : <i>met</i> 'with', <i>swemmen</i> 'to swim', <i>quam</i> 'came'
[n]	<i>n</i> , <i>nn</i> : <i>niet</i> 'not', <i>sonne</i> 'sun', <i>binnen</i> 'inside', <i>ghaen</i> 'to go'
[ŋ]	<i>n</i> in front of a velar consonant: <i>ghinc</i> 'went', <i>si songhen</i> 'they sang'
[l]	<i>l</i> , <i>ll</i> : <i>luttel</i> 'little', <i>vallen</i> 'to fall', <i>wel</i> 'well'
[r]	<i>r</i> , <i>rr</i> : <i>root</i> 'red', <i>verre</i> 'far', <i>meerre</i> 'more', <i>puer</i> 'pure'

The following consonant clusters require special attention:

[kw] is spelled *qu*, e.g. *(si) quamen* '(they) came'.

[sX] in initial position is usually found as the grapheme *sc*, e.g. *scoe* 'shoe', while in medial position, *ssc*, *ssch* or *sc* occur most frequently, e.g. *vissch* 'fish', *tuscen*, *tusscen* 'between'. (When in final position, the grapheme *sch* was probably pronounced [s], e.g. *mensch* 'human being', *vleesch* 'flesh, meat'.)

[ks] is usually spelled *x* or *cs*, e.g. *coninx* 'of the king', *eertrijcs* 'of the earth'.

1.9.2. Semivowels

The corresponding graphemes for the palatal semivowel [j] are *j*, *i*, or *y*, e.g. *ja* 'yes', *ionchere* 'young man, youth', *ye* 'ever'. The semivowel [w] is usually represented by *w*, e.g. *wonder* 'wonder'.

12 Chapter 1

1.9.3. Short vowels

Short vowels in stressed position are usually spelled as follows:

[i] is spelled *i*, e.g. *kint* 'child', *in* 'in'.

[ü] is spelled *u*, e.g. *lucht* 'air', *luttel* 'little'.

[e] is spelled *e*, e.g. *es* 'is', *herte* 'heart'.

[o] is spelled *o*, e.g. *onder* 'under', *op* 'on'.

[a] is spelled *a*, e.g. *alse* 'as', *dan* 'than'.

In weakly stressed syllables, a schwa may occur, which is usually spelled *e*, e.g. *horen* 'to hear', *duvel* 'devil'.

1.9.4. Long vowels

Long vowels are spelled differently in open and closed syllables. In open syllables, length is usually not indicated graphemically. The use of one consonantal grapheme following the vowel indicates that this vowel is long. In closed syllables, the following practices are common: one may find double spelling of the corresponding short vowel, or the corresponding short vowel followed by the grapheme *e* or *i* may indicate the length of the vowel.

[ī] is often spelled *i* in open syllables, *ij* in closed syllables, e.g. *wi* 'we', *wijs* 'way, manner'.

[ū] is often spelled *u* in open syllables, *uu*, *ue*, *ui*, *uy* in closed syllables, e.g. *duvel* 'devil', *ghebruyken* 'to enjoy', *buuc* 'stomach'.

[ē] is often spelled *ee* in closed syllables, *e* or *ee* in open syllables, e.g. *been* 'leg, bone', *een* 'one', *cleder* 'clothes', *eere*, *ere* 'honor'.

[ō] is often spelled *o*, *oo*, *oe* in open syllables, *oe*, *oo* in closed syllables, e.g. *oghe* 'eye', *ore* 'ear', *loop*, *loep* 'course'.

[ē] is often spelled *e* or *ee*, e.g. *gheven* 'to give', *wesen* 'to be', *beelde* 'statue'.

[ō] is often spelled *o*, *oe*, *ue*, e.g. *vruechde*, *vroechede* 'joy', *rueke* 'smell', *joghet* 'youth'.

[ō] is often spelled *o*, e.g. *comen* 'to come' *dore* 'through', *somer* 'summer', *over* 'over'.

[ā] is often spelled *a* in open syllables, *ae* in closed syllables, e.g. *laten* 'to let', *tael* 'language'.

1.9.5. Diphthongs

[ie] is often spelled *ie* or *ye*, e.g. *ziele* 'soul', *nyet* 'not'.

[üe], an allophone of [ū], is spelled in the same way as [ū], e.g. *puer* 'pure', *ghebuer* 'neighbor'.

[oe] is usually spelled *oe*, in front of labials or velars *ou* may occur, e.g. *goet* 'good', *boete* 'compensation', *bouc* 'book'.

[ei] is often spelled *ei* or *ey*, e.g. *beiden* 'to wait', *breydel* 'bridle', *screyen* 'to cry'.

[öü] is often spelled *oi*, *oy*, e.g. *proie* 'prey', *sloye* 'veil'.

[ou] may be represented by *au* or *ou*, e.g. *rouwich* 'sad, sorrowful', *houden* 'to keep', *vrauwe* 'woman'.

1.10. Assimilation

Middle Dutch texts display several instances of assimilation, a phonetic process in which two phonemes acquire common characteristics (i.e. partial assimilation) or become identical (i.e. total assimilation). These two consonants are usually contiguous in Middle Dutch. Sometimes, they may originally have been separated by a syncopated or apocopated *e*. Below is a list of instances in which assimilation frequently occurs. Note that assimilated and non-assimilated forms can be found side by side in the same text. Hence the following list does not reflect obligatory rules.

(i) Voiced consonants may be partially assimilated to a preceding *t* or *s* and become voiceless, e.g. *ontfaen* (< *ontvaen*) 'to receive', *huysfrou* (< *huysvrou*) 'housewife'.

(ii) *t* or *d* may be totally assimilated to a following *l*, e.g. *gollec* (< *godlec*) 'godly, pious', *tillijc* (< *tidelijc*) 'temporary, temporal' (with syncope of the schwa).

(iii) *t* may be dropped in the following consonant clusters: *nts*, *chts*, e.g. *savons* (< *savonts*) 'in the evening, at night', *snachs* (< *snachts*) 'at night'.

(iv) When following a voiceless consonant, *d* is devoiced, e.g. *onttoen* (< *ontdoen*) 'to undo, untie', (*ende dat* > *ent dat* >) *entat* 'and that' (with apocope of the schwa), (*ende die* > *ent die* >) *entie* (with apocope of the schwa). This is especially important in the formation of the preterit tense of weak verbs, which take the affix *ed* and a person/number ending, e.g. *si maecten* (< *makeden*) 'they made, did' (with syncope of the schwa), *hi hoopte* (< *hopedede*) 'he hoped' (with syncope of the schwa).

(v) *t* or *d* may be totally assimilated to a following *n*, e.g. *minnacht* (< *middenacht*) 'midnight' (with syncope of the schwa).

(vi) *n* may be totally assimilated to a following *r*. Assimilation of *n* frequently happens before the inflectional ending *er(e)*, e.g. *sire* (< *sinere*) 'his', *miere* (< *minere*) 'my', *neghere* (< *neghenere*) 'no', *ere* (< *enere*) 'a, an' (all with syncope of the schwa).

(vii) *n* may be partially or totally assimilated to a following bilabial consonant, e.g. *omblide* (< *onblide*) 'unhappy', *ommachtich* (< *onmachtich*) 'powerless'.

(viii) *n* may be totally assimilated to a following *l*, e.g. (*manlicanderen* >) *mallicanderen* 'each other'.

1.11. Proclitics and enclitics

A number of words with weak sentence stress could lose their autonomy and form one phonetic unit with the preceding or following stressed word. Such clitic words may be prepositions, articles, personal pronouns, etc. When they are linked with a following word, we speak of proclitics, e.g. *ter* (< *te* + *der*) 'at + the'. If they occur in combination with a preceding word they are called enclitics, e.g. *ghevic* (< *gheve* + *ic*) 'give + I'. In some cases it may be difficult to identify a clitic, since assimilation, apocope, and syncope may have taken place. The following list is limited to those proclitic and enclitic forms that occur frequently:

1.11.1. Proclitics

1.11.1.1. The definite article

The corresponding full form is *die, de*, e.g. *darme* (< *de* + *arme*) 'the poor', *dander* (< *de* + *ander*) 'the other'.

The corresponding full form is *dat*, e.g. *tkint* (< *dat* + *kint*) 'the child', *iconfoort* (< *dat* + *confoort*) 'the relief', *tlijden* (< *dat* + *lijden*) 'the suffering', *teken* (< *dat* + *teken*) 'the sign', *dbloet* (< *dat* + *bloet*) 'the blood'.

The corresponding full form is *des*, e.g. *smorghens, tsmorghens* (< *des* + *morghens*) 'in the morning', *savonts* (< *des* + *avonts*) 'at night, in the evening', *dsdaechs* (< *des* + *daechs*) 'during the daytime'.

1.11.1.2. The personal pronoun *het* 'it'

The corresponding full form is *het*, e.g. *tware* (< *het* + *ware*) 'it be', *tens* (< *het* + *en* + *es*) 'it is not'.

1.11.1.3. The preposition *te* 'at, to'

The corresponding full form is *te*, e.g. *tenen* (< *te* + *enen*) 'at a, an', *tien* (< *te* + *dien*) 'at that', *ter* (< *te* + *der*) 'to the', *tonsen* (< *te* + *onsen*) 'to our'.

1.11.1.4. The conjunction *ende* 'and'

The corresponding full form is *ende*, e.g. *entie* (< *ende* + *die*) 'and + the', *entat* (< *ende* + *dat*) 'and + that', *entese* (< *ende* + *dese*) 'and + this, these'.

1.11.2. Enclitics

1.11.2.1. The definite article and the demonstrative adjective

The full forms of the demonstratives and the definite article are *die*, *der*, *den*, *dat*, etc. Devoicing of the initial consonant may occur, e.g. *optie* (< *op* + *die*) 'on the', *uter* (< *ute* + *der*) 'out of + the', *metten* (< *met* + *den*) 'with + the', *aent* (< *ane* + *dat*) 'on + the', *dattie* (< *dat* + *die*) 'that + the', *datter* (< *dat* + *der*) 'that + the'.

1.11.2.2. Personal pronouns in the nominative case

The full form of the personal pronoun 'I' is *ic*. When this form is used as a clitic, apocope of *e* may occur in the preceding form, e.g. *hebbic* (< *hebbe* + *ic*) 'have + I', *ghevic* (< *gheve* + *ic*) 'give + I', *mochtic* (< *mochte* + *ic*) 'might + I'.

The full form of the personal pronoun 'you (sg.)' is *du*; in the clitic form, initial *d* is devoiced following *s*, e.g. *slaepstu* (< *slaeps* + *du*) 'sleep + you', *heefstu* (< *heefs* + *du*) 'have + you', *haetstu* (< *haets* + *du*) 'ate + you'.

The full form of the personal pronoun 'he' is *hi*; in the clitic form, the pronoun loses its initial consonant, e.g. *datti* (< *dat* + *i*) 'that + he', *wildi* (< *wilde* + *i*) 'wanted + he', *seidi* (< *seide* + *i*) 'said + he'.

The full form of the personal pronoun 'she' is *si*; the clitic form is *si* or *se*, e.g. *wordtse* (< *word* + *se*) 'becomes + she', *brenctsi* (< *brenct* + *si*) 'brings + she' (with assimilation of the person/number ending)

The full form of the personal pronoun 'it' is *het*; the pronoun loses its initial consonant, and *e* may be syncopated, e.g. *dat* (< *dat* + *et*) 'that + it', *waest* (< *was* + *et*) 'was + it', *hiet* (< *hiet* + *et*) 'ordered + it'.

The full form of the personal pronoun 'we' is *wi*; a preceding *en* or *n* may be dropped, e.g. *brenghevi*, *brencwi* (< *brenghe* + *wi*) 'bring + we'.

The full form of the personal pronoun 'you (pl.)' is *ghi*: the pronoun loses its initial consonant in the clitic form, e.g. *sidi* (< *sijd* + *i*) 'are + you', *seldi* (< *seld* + *i*) 'shall + you', *seidi* (< *seide* + *i*) 'told + you', *mooghd* (< *mooghd* + *i*) 'may + you'.

The full form of the personal pronoun 'they' is *si*: a preceding *n* or *en* may be dropped, e.g. *worpsi* (< *worpen* + *si*) 'threw + they'.

1.11.2.3. Personal pronouns in the oblique cases

The full form of the personal pronoun is *het*, the clitic form is *et* (acc. nt. sg.): the pronoun loses its initial consonant and *e* may be syncopated, e.g. *ment* (< *men* + *et*) 'one + it', *sijt* (< *si* + *et*) 'they + it'.

The full form of the personal pronoun is *hem*, the clitic form is *ene*, *en* 'him (acc. m. sg.)': apocope of *e* frequently happens, e.g. *hine* (< *hi* + *ene*) 'he + him', *hi roerdene* (< *roerde* + *ene*) 'he touched him', *sijne* (< *si* + *ene*) 'they + him', *men* (< *men* + *en*) 'one + him', *si custen* (< *custe* + *en*) 'she kissed him'.

The full form of the personal pronoun is *hem*, the clitic form is *em* 'him (dat. m./nt. sg.)', *n* or *en* may be dropped, e.g. *si dedem* (< *deden* + *em*) 'they made + him', *dat dochte* (< *dochte* + *em*) 'that seemed + to him'.

The full form of the personal pronoun is *sijns*, the clitic form is *es* (gen. m./nt. 3rd sg.): apocope of *e* may occur, e.g. *si lietens* (< *lieten* + *es*) 'they let + gen. obj.', *ic bens* (< *ben* + *es*) 'I am + gen. obj.', *ic hebs* (< *hebbe* + *es*) 'I have + gen. obj.'

The full form of the personal pronoun is *hem*, *hen*, the clitic form is *en* 'them (dat. pl.)': *e* or *en* may be dropped, e.g. *si ghaven* (< *ghaven* + *en*) 'they gave + them'.

The full form of the personal pronoun is *haer*, the clitic form is *ere*, *er* 'her (dat./gen. f. sg.; gen. pl.)': *e* may be syncopated, e.g. *hi gaffer* (< *gaf* + *er*) 'he gave + her', *sire* (< *si* + *ere*) 'she + her'.

1.11.2.4. The adverb *daer* 'there'

To the full form *daer* 'there', the corresponding clitic form is *er*, e.g. *stonder in* (< *stond* + *er in*) 'stood + in it, in there'.

1.11.2.5. Negation *en, ne*

Total assimilation of a preceding consonant may occur, e.g. *men* (< *men* + *en*) 'one + neg.', *hen* (< *het* + *en*) 'it + neg.', *in* (< *ic* + *en*) 'I + neg.', *inne* (< *ic* + *ne*) 'I + neg.'

Note that enclitics with an initial vowel may cause vowel lengthening in originally closed syllables, e.g. *waest* (< *was* + *et*) 'was + it', *eest* (< *es* + *et*) 'is + it'. In these instances, lengthening of the vowel necessarily happened prior to the syncope of the schwa. However, one also finds the same constructions without lengthened vowel in analogy to *was* 'was', *es* 'is'.

1.12. Epenthetic *d*

In Middle Dutch, *d* may be inserted between *l*, *n*, and *r* and a following syllabic *r*. The insertion of *d* has no etymological justification, and it is believed to facilitate pronunciation. This phenomenon is called "epenthesis". Epenthetic *d* may be observed in the comparative form of certain adjectives, e.g. *edelder* (< *edel* + *er*) 'nobler', *swaerder* (< *swaer* + *er*) 'heavier'. It also frequently occurs in front of the inflectional ending *er*, e.g. *sijnder* (< *sijn* + *er*) 'his', *scoonder* (< *scone* + *er*) beautiful'.

1.13. *ou* + dental stop

During the earliest stages of the history of the Dutch language, the sequences *al* + dental stop and *ol* + dental stop coalesced. Following this, *l* was vocalized, thus giving rise to the diphthong *ou*, e.g. *out* 'old', *gout* 'gold'. As a result, one may find forms within one paradigm in which *ou* alternates with a short vowel followed by *l*, e.g. *ic wilde, woude* 'I wanted'.

Chapter 2

Floris ende Blancefloer [Floris and Blancefloer]

2.1. Reading and textual analysis: *Floris ende Blancefloer* [Floris and Blancefloer]

The following excerpt is taken from *Floris ende Blancefloer*, a love story set in a Byzantine background. The romance has come to us in Diederick van Assenede's (circa 1230-1290) translation of the French *Floire et Blancheflor* (circa 1160) and dates from the middle of the thirteenth century, although the exact date of origin is not certain. The Middle Dutch version was written in the dialect of East Flanders.

Floris, the son of an Islamic king, and Blancefloer, the daughter of a captive Christian woman, are raised together at a Byzantine court. Ever since their earliest childhood, the two children have been inseparable. They play together and are also educated together. As the king hears of his son's love for Blancefloer, he tries everything within his power to separate both children. He sends Floris away to a boarding school, but when Floris does not forget his beautiful companion, Blancefloer is sold as a slave and taken away on a ship. In order to convince his son that Blancefloer has died, the king orders that a sepulchral monument be built. In the end, however, Floris realizes that Blancefloer is still alive and sets out to find her. At the conclusion of the romance, the lovers are reunited. The excerpt in this chapter describes the sepulchral monument which was erected for Blancefloer's grave.

In the textual analysis following every excerpt, each newly introduced vocabulary item is translated into English. Every word is also listed in the final glossary. The analysis will clarify grammatical structures that are new to the reader. In order to provide a smooth introduction to the reading passages, a literal English translation accompanies the first two reading selections.

- 1 *En was creature ne gene*
 Si en stonder in gescreven:
 Die vogel die in die lucht sweven,
 Serpente, liebarde met andren dieren,
5 *Ende vissche die in der rivieren,*
 In des zeewes gronde swemmen.

- Met dieren stenen ende met gemmen
 Scierden die goutsmede haer werke.
 Ten hoofden setten si opten serke,
 10 Daer ment best moge bescouwen,
 Een beelde van finen marbre gehouwen,
 Beworpen van zilvere ende van goude
 Ende van varwen menichfoude,
 Blauwe, roet, gelu ende groene.
 15 Bider wijsheit van Salomoene
 Ende bi haers selfs list groet
 Maken sijn, dat emmer boet
 Sijn hant ter sonnen waert geredt,
 Al waest metten swerke bedect;
 20 Ende also die sonne daer ane sceen,
 Sone was man in die werelt geen,
 Die so claer hadde die oghen
 Dat hi den sciijn mochte gedogen.

- 1 *en ... ne gene:* *en:* adv. of neg.; *ne gene:* neg. 'no, not a'
was: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *wesen* 'to be'
creature: nom. f. sg. 'creature'
 2 *si:* pers. pron. 'she, it' (refers to *creature* in 1.1)
en: see 1. 1
stonder in: *stond* + *er in*; *stont:* ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *staen* 'to stand'; *er in:* pron. adv. 'in it'
gescreven: pp. of *scriven* 'to write'
 3 *die:* def. art. 'the'
vogel: nom. m. pl. of *vogel* 'bird'
die: rel. pron. 'that, which' (antecedent is *vogel*)
in: prep. 'in'
die: def. art. 'the'
lucht: acc. f. sg. of *lucht* 'air, sky'
sweven: ind. 3rd pl. pres. of *sweven* 'to hover, float'
 4 *serpente:* nom. nt./m. pl. of *serpent* 'snake'
liebarde: nom. m. pl. of *liebaert* 'leopard, lion'
met: prep. 'with'
andren: adj. *ander* 'other' (For adjectives, the uninflected form is indicated following the abbreviation "adj.")
dieren: dat. nt./m. pl. of *dier* 'animal'
 5 *ende:* conj. 'and'
vissche: nom. m. pl. of *vissch* 'fish'
die: rel. pron. 'that, which' (antecedent is *vissche*)
der: def. art. 'the'
rivieren: gen. f. pl. of *riviere* 'river, stream'

- 6 *des*: def. art. 'the'
zeewes: gen. m. sg. of *zee* 'sea'
gronde: dat. m. sg. of *gront* 'bottom'
swemmen: ind. 3rd pl. pres. of *swemmen* 'to swim'
- 7 *dieren*: adj. *dier* 'expensive, costly'
stenen: dat. m. pl. of *steen* 'stone, jewel'
gemmen: dat. f. pl. of *gemme* 'gem, jewel'
- 8 *scierden*: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *scieren* 'to adorn, decorate'
die: def. art. 'the'
goutsmede: nom. m. pl. of *goutsmit* 'goldsmith'
haer: poss. adj. 'their'
werke: acc. nt. pl. of *werc* 'work'
- 9 *ten hoofden*: 'at the head'
setten: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *setten* 'to place, put'
si: pers. pron. 'they'
opten: *op* + *den*; *op*: prep. 'on'; *den*: def. art. 'the'
serke: dat. nt./m. sg. of *serc* 'tombstone'
- 10 *daer*: 'where'
ment: *men* + *et*; *men*: pron. 'one'; *et*: cl. pron. 'it'
best: adv. 'best'
moge: subj. 3rd sg. pres. of *mogen* 'to be able, may'
bescouwen: inf. 'to notice, see'
- 11 *een*: indef. art. 'a, an'
beelde: acc. nt. sg. of *beelde* 'statue'
van: prep. 'with, of'
finen: adj. *fijn* 'fine'
marbre: dat. nt. sg. of *marber* 'marble'
gehouden: pp. of *houwen* 'to carve, hew'
- 12 *beworpen*: pp. of *bewerpen* 'to gild'
zilvere: dat. nt. sg. of *zilver* 'silver'
goude: dat. nt. sg. of *gout* 'gold'
- 13 *varwen*: dat. f. pl. of *varwe* 'color'
menichfoude: adj. *menichfout* 'manyfold'
- 14 *blauwe*: adj. *blauwe* 'blue'
roet: adj. *roet* 'red'
gelu: adj. *gelu* 'yellow'
groene: adj. *groene* 'green'
- 15 *bider*: *bi* + *der*; *bi*: prep. 'by means of, through'; *der*: def. art. 'the'
wijsheit: dat. f. sg. of *wijsheit* 'wisdom'
- 16 *bi*: prep. 'by means of, through'
haers selfs: 'their own'
list: dat. f./m. sg. of *list* 'skill, knowledge'
groet: adj. *groet* 'big'

- 17 *maken*: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *maken* 'to do, make'
sijt: *si* + *et*; *si*: pers. pron. 'they'; *et*: cl. pron. 'it'
dat: *dat* + *et*; *dat*: conj. '(so) that'; *et*: cl. pron. 'it'
emmer: adv. 'always'
- 18 *boet*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *bieden*, here: 'to hold'
sijn: poss. adj. *sijn* 'his, its'
hant: acc. f. sg. of *hant* 'hand'
ter sonnen waert: 'in the direction of the sun, toward the sun'
gerect: pp. of *recken* 'to reach, stretch'
- 19 *al*: conj. 'even if, even though'
waest: *was* + *et*; *was*: see l. 1; *et*: cl. pron. 'it'
metten: *met* + *den*; *met*: prep. 'with'; *den*: def. art. 'the'
swerke: dat. nt. sg. of *swerc* '(dark) cloud'
bedect: pp. of *bedecken* 'to cover'
- 20 *also*: conj. 'when, as soon as'
die: def. art. 'the'
sonne: nom. f. sg. 'sun'
daer ane: pron. adv. 'on it'
sceen: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *scinen* 'to shine'
- 21 *sone ... geen*: *so* + *ne geen*; *so*: conj. 'then'; *ne ... geen*: neg.
'no, not a'
man: nom. m. sg. 'man'
die: def. art. 'the'
werelt: acc. f. sg. of *werelt* 'world'
- 22 *die*: rel. pron. 'who' (antecedent is *man*)
so: adv. 'so, in this manner'
claer: adj. *claer*, here: 'strong'
hadde: subj. II, 3rd sg. of *hebben* 'to have'
die: def. art. 'the'
oghen: acc. nt./f. pl. of *oghe* 'eye'
- 23 *dat*: conj. 'that'
hi: pers. pron. 'he'
den: def. art. 'the'
scijn: acc. m. sg. of *scijn* 'glare, glow'
mochte: subj. II, 3rd sg. of *mogen* 'to be able, may'
gedogen: inf. 'to bear, endure'

2.2. Translation

There was no creature in the world that was not represented on it: the birds that hover in the sky, snakes, leopards with other animals, and fish that swim in the bottom of the rivers and the sea. The goldsmiths decorated their work

with valuable stones and gems. At the head of the gravestone, where it could best be seen, they put a statue carved in fine marble. (It was) gilded with silver and gold and many colors: blue, red, yellow, and green. By means of Solomon's wisdom and through their own great skill, they made it in such a way that it always reached its hand towards the sun, even if that were covered by dark clouds. And when the sun shone on it, there wasn't a man in the world who had such strong eyes that he could endure the glare.

2.3. Nouns: Introduction

Each Middle Dutch noun belongs to one of three genders: masculine, feminine, or neuter. The grammatical gender of nouns denoting animate beings does not always coincide with the natural gender. Inanimate objects may belong to any of the three genders. Nouns are also marked for number: singular or plural. Finally, Middle Dutch nouns can occur in the following four cases: the nominative, the accusative, the dative, or the genitive. (See 3.3, 5.3, 9.7.)

Note that Middle Dutch dictionaries sometimes list more than one gender for a given noun. Such differences are due to temporal and geographical variations. In the textual analysis, I have listed the gender(s) as entered in the standard Middle Dutch dictionary by Verwijs, unless the context (e.g. adjective ending) provides an indication of the gender used in this particular instance. For example, *oghe* 'eye' (2:22) is attested as a feminine and as a masculine in different texts. In this excerpt, the context does not provide an indication of the gender, thus both genders are listed. In contrast, the dictionary entry for *werelt* 'world' (2:21) indicates that it can be used either as a feminine or as a masculine noun, but through the preceding definite article it is clearly used as a feminine. Hence it is listed as a feminine noun in the textual analysis.

Middle Dutch nouns can be classified according to the nature of the inflectional ending they take. If a noun takes an inflectional ending that contains a vowel, it belongs to the strong or vocalic declension. If the inflectional marker is *n*, we are dealing with a noun from the weak or consonantal declension. Generally speaking, the nominative singular form of strong nouns ends in a consonant (e.g. *steen* 'stone, jewel'), while it ends in a weakly stressed *e* for weak nouns (e.g. *lichame* 'body'). Occasionally, the Middle Dutch dictionary may list a noun with a strong and a weak variant.

2.4. Strong masculine and neuter nouns

The reading passage contains several strong masculine and neuter nouns, e.g. *vogel* 'bird', *serpent* 'snake', *liebaert* 'leopard, lion', *dier* 'animal, living being', *vissch* 'fish', *gront* 'bottom', *steen* 'stone', *goutsmid* 'goldsmith', *werc* 'work', *serc* 'tombstone', *zilver* 'silver', *gout* 'gold', etc.

Strong masculine and neuter nouns are declined as indicated in Table 6:

Table 6. The declension pattern of strong masculine and neuter nouns

masculine	singular	plural
N	<i>steen</i> 'stone, jewel'	<i>stene</i>
A	<i>steen</i>	<i>stene</i>
D	<i>stene</i>	<i>stenen</i>
G	<i>steens, stenes</i>	<i>stene</i>

neuter	singular	plural
N	<i>dier</i> 'animal'	<i>diere</i>
A	<i>dier</i>	<i>diere</i>
D	<i>diere</i>	<i>dieren</i>
G	<i>diers, dieres</i>	<i>diere</i>

Special features of the above case and number categories include the following:

1. Dative singular:

- The ending *e* does not always occur, e.g. nom. *coninc* 'king', dat. *coninc*; nom. *hont* 'dog', dat. *hont*.
- Stems which end in a stressed vowel do not take *e* in the dative, e.g. nom. *scoe* 'shoe', dat. *scoe*. However, the dat. sg. of *see* 'sea' is *seewe*.
- If a noun ends in weakly stressed *el*, *en*, or *er*, the *e* of the stem may be syncopated, e.g. nom. *marber* 'marble', dat. *marbre*.

2. Genitive singular:

- The use of *s* prevails in most texts, although one may find *es* in the earliest Middle Dutch documents, especially in monosyllabic words.
- Words whose nom. sg. already ends in *s* do not show an additional *s* in the gen. sg., e.g. nom. *ros* 'horse', gen. *ros* (< *ros* + *es*).

(c) The gen. sg. of *see* 'sea' is *seewes*.

3. Nominative/accusative plural:

(a) From an historical point of view, the plural marker for strong masculine nouns is *e*. However, one frequently finds *en*, especially in younger texts. As a rule, nouns whose stem ends in a vowel take the plural ending *n*, e.g. nom. sg. *scoe* 'shoe', pl. *scoen*.

(b) *s* as a plural ending often occurs for nouns of foreign origin, e.g. nom. sg. *pelgrim* 'pilgrim', pl. *pelgrims*.

(c) Originally, strong neuter nouns did not have an ending in the plural. However, in analogy to masculine nouns, the ending *e* (or *en*) was applied to these nouns. A few monosyllabic neuter nouns have retained their original plural form, e.g. nom. sg. *jaer* 'year', pl. *jaer*.

(d) Some neuter nouns take an irregular plural ending *er*, or *ere(n)*. Among the most frequent are: *been* 'bone', *bert* 'board', *blat* 'leaf', *doek* 'cloth', *ei* 'egg', *gat* 'hole', *calf* 'calf', *kint* 'child', *cleet* 'cloth, dress', *cruut* 'herb', *lam* 'lamb', *wicht* '(human) being, child'. (Some of these also form a regular plural in *e* or *en*.)

(e) Nouns ending in *el*, *en*, and *er* may take one of the following plural markers: (1) They may take *e(n)*, e.g. nom. sg. *vogel* 'bird', pl. *voegele(n)*; (2) The unstressed *e* of the stem may be syncopated, e.g. nom. pl. *vogle*; (3) They may take *s* in the plural, e.g. nom. pl. *vogels*; (4) They may not show any plural marker, e.g. nom. sg. *vogel*, pl. *vogel*;

Chapter 3

Vanden Levene ons Heren [The Life of Our Lord]

3.1. Reading and textual analysis: *Vanden Levene ons Heren* [The Life of Our Lord]

The reading passage in this chapter is from *Vanden Levene ons Heren* [The Life of Our Lord], a religious poem of approximately 5,000 verse lines, written in rhymed couplets. Not much is known about its author, except that he was a *clerc* (cleric) who had the intention of recording the life and sufferings of Jesus Christ in the vernacular for those who did not understand Latin very well. In a lively style the author relates many details about Jesus Christ's childhood, education, and sufferings, yet he never forgets his didactic purpose. The work is based on the Gospels and the Apocrypha, but is adapted freely to accommodate the author's world view. For example, the society depicted in the poem is typically medieval: Pilate's soldiers are called knights, and Caiphaz is referred to as a bishop. The writer also indicates that Jesus Christ knew French and Dutch.

The text of *Vanden Levene ons Heren* is extant in one complete version and several fragments. The complete copy was finished on New Year's Eve 1438 and was probably written in West Brabant. Some scholars have suggested that it is a rather unfaithful copy of a previous manuscript. The original composition of the poem might be dated as early as the second half of the thirteenth century.

The reading passage below describes the events immediately following Christ's birth in Bethlehem.

- 1 *Daert in de crebbe geboren lach*
 Die esel vernam ende versach
 Dat het was ene saleghen dracht
 Dat daer gheboren wert inder nacht
- 5 *Die esel liet daer siin eten staen*
 Ende viel in knieghede saen
 By bethleem inder seluer nacht
 Waren herden daer elc siin vee wacht
 Die soe grote claerheit alle sien
- 10 *Dat sie van vruchten alle wilden vlien*
 Soe grote claerheit elc om hem sach

- 15 *Dat elc van vare in onmacht lach*
Vreese ende wonder elken man
Tot datse die inghel vertroesten quam
Die inghel seide ne vruchte niet
U allen es vele wel ghesciēt
Hoghelijc weest ende lacht
Bliscap es gheboren in deser nacht
 20 *Te bethleem binnen der stat*
Daer loept alle ne sijt niet lat
In ene crebbe leit daer gheboren
Een kint. ne waert ghi waert verloren
By hem en es no smerte no galle
Dat aenbeet daer loept alle
 25 *Alle die sijn ende nv leuen*
Selen noch voer dat kint beuen
Het heeft oec in sire ghewelt
Al die werelt ende al dat wilt
Het es coninc van hemelrike
 30 *Het weet de ghedachte van yegelike*
Het es god gheweldich here
Dien kinde doet alle lof ende ere
- 1 *daert: daer + et; daer: conj. 'as, while'; et: cl. pron. 'it'*
in: prep. 'in'
de: def. art. 'the'
crebbe: acc. f. sg. of crebbe 'manger'
geboren: pp. 'born' (the inf. beren 'to carry' is not often used)
lach: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of ligghen 'to lie'
 2 *die: def. art. 'the'*
esel: nom. m. sg. 'ass, donkey'
vernam: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of vernemen 'to see, perceive'
versach: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of versien 'to recognize, understand'
 3 *dat: conj. 'that'*
het: pers. pron. 'it'
ene: indef. art. 'a, an'
saleghe: adj. salech 'blessed, holy'
dracht: nom. f. sg., here: 'newborn child'
 4 *dat: rel. pron. 'who'*
daer: adv. 'there'
gheboren wert: 'was born'
inder: in + der; in: prep. 'in'; der: cl. def. art. 'the'
nacht: dat. f. sg. of nacht 'night'
 5 *liet ... staen: 'left standing'*
siin: poss. adj. 'his, its'

- 6 *eten*: acc. nt. sg. of *eten* 'food, fare'
viel: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *vallen* 'to fall'
knieghebede: acc./dat. nt. sg. of *knieghebede* 'prayer said on one's knees'
saen: adv. 'soon, immediately'
- 7 *by*: prep. 'near'
seluer: *selfselue* adj. 'same'
- 8 *waren*: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *wesen* 'to be'
herden: nom. m. pl. of *herde* 'shepherd'
daer: conj. 'where'
elc: pron. 'each (one)'
vee: acc. nt. sg. of *vee* 'cattle, livestock'
wacht: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *wachten* 'to tend, watch'
- 9 *die*: rel. pron. 'who' (antecedent is *herden*)
grote: adj. *groot* 'big, large'
claerheyt: acc. f. sg. of *claerheyt* 'glare, lustre'
alle: pron. 'all'
sien: ind. 3rd pl. pres. of *sien* 'to see'
- 10 *dat*: conj. 'that'
sie: pers. pron. 'they'
vruchten: dat. f./m. sg. of *vruchte* 'fear, terror'
wilden: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *willen* 'to want, wish'
vlien: inf. 'to flee'
- 11 *om*: prep. 'around'
hem: refl. pron. 'himself'
sach: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *sien* 'to see'
- 12 *dat*: conj. 'so that'
vare: dat. m. sg. of *vaer*, *vare* 'fear, dread'
onmacht: acc./dat. f. sg. of *onmacht* 'faint, swoon'
- 13 *vreese*: nom. f. sg. 'terror, fright'
wonder: nom. nt. sg. 'surprise, astonishment'
elken: pron. 'each (one)'
man: the scribe probably wrote *man* instead of *nam*: ind. 3rd sg. of *nemen*, here: 'to overtake'
- 14 *tot datse*: *tot dat* + *se*; *tot dat*: conj. 'until'; *se*: cl. pron. 'them'
inghel: nom. m. sg. 'angel'
vertroesten: inf. 'to comfort, encourage'
- 15 *quam*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *comen* 'to come'
seide: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *segghen* 'to say'
ne ... niet: 'not'
- 16 *vruchte*: impv. 2nd sg. (with pl. meaning) of *vruchten* 'to fear'
u allen es vele wel ghesciet: 'much good happened to all of you'
- 17 *hoghelijc*: adj. *hoghelijc* 'glad, happy'
weest: impv. 2nd pl. of *wesen* 'to be'

- 18 *lacht*: impv. 2nd pl. of *lachen* 'to laugh, rejoice'
 18 *bliscap*: nom. f. sg. 'joy, gladness'
 19 *binnen*: prep. 'within'
der: def. art. 'the'
stat: dat. f. sg. of *stat* 'city'
 20 *daer*: adv. 'hither, to that place'
loept: impv. 2nd pl. of *lopen* 'to run'
sijt: impv. 2nd pl. of *sijn* 'to be'
lat: adj. *lat* 'lazy, slow'
 21 *ene*: indef. art. 'a, an'
leit: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *ligghen* 'to lie'
 22 *een*: indef. art. 'a, an'
kint: nom. nt. sg. 'child'
ne waert ghi waert verloren: 'If it had not been born, you would be lost.'
 23 *hem*: pers. pron. 'him, it'
en ... no ... no ...: conj. 'neither ... nor ...'
es: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *sijn* 'to be'
smerte: nom. f. sg. 'sorrow, grief'
galle: nom. f. sg. 'anger'
 24 *dat*: dem. pron. 'that (one)'
aenbeet: impv. 2nd pl. of *aenbeden* 'to worship'
 25 *die*: rel. pron. 'who' (antecedent is *alle*)
sijn: ind. 3rd pl. pres. of *sijn* 'to be'
nu: adv. 'now'
leuen: ind. 3rd pl. pres. of *leuen* 'to live'
 26 *selen ... beuen*: 'will tremble'
noch: adv. 'yet, still'
voer: prep. 'in front of'
dat: dem. adj. 'that'
 27 *heeft*: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *hebben* 'to have'
oec: adv. 'also'
sire: poss. pron. 'his, its'
ghewelt: dat. f. sg. of *ghewelt* 'power, authority'
 28 *al*: pron. 'all'
dat: def. art. 'the'
wilt: acc. nt. sg. of *wilt* 'undomesticated animal'
 29 *coninc*: nom. m. sg. 'king'
hemelrike: dat. nt. sg. of *hemelrijc*, *hemelrike* 'Kingdom of Heaven'
 30 *weet*: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *weten* 'to know'
de: def art. 'the'
ghedachte: acc. f. sg. of *ghedachte* 'thought'
yegelijke: pron. 'each (one)'

- 31 *god*: nom. m. sg. 'God'
gheweldich here: nom. m. sg. 'Supreme Lord'
 32 *dien*: dem. adj. 'that'
doet: impv. 2nd pl. of *doen*, here: 'to give, to grant'
lof: acc. m./nt. sg. of *lof* 'praise, commendation'
ere: acc. f. sg. of *ere* 'honor'

3.2. Translation

As it [the child] lay there, newborn in the manger, the donkey saw and understood that it was a blessed child, who was born there that night. The donkey left its food behind there, and immediately fell down on its knees in prayer.

Near Bethlehem that same night where everyone herds cattle, there were shepherds who all saw such a shining light, that each one lay swooning with fear. Terror and astonishment overtook each one, until the angel came to comfort them. The angel said: "Fear not. A lot of good has happened to all of you. Be happy and rejoice. Joy has been born tonight, in Bethlehem, within the city. All run hither, don't be lazy. There a child lies, born in a manger. If it had not been born, you would be lost. In its vicinity there is neither suffering nor anger. Worship it, run hither. Everyone who now exists will tremble in front of this child in the future. It also has all the world and all undomesticated animals in its power. It is King of Heaven. It knows everybody's thoughts. It is God, the Supreme Lord. Praise and honor that child."

3.3. Simple sentence structure

The basic structure of an unmarked, simple declarative sentence in Middle Dutch has the following linear order of constituent elements: subject + verb (+ object). The following sentence illustrates this:

- (1) *Ick vanghe den windt.* (11:17)
 I catch the wind
 'I am catching the wind.'

The subject and the object may be one single noun, a noun phrase or a complete clause. If the sentence contains a transitive verb, the object must be expressed. The finite verb stands in second position and agrees in person and number with the subject.

In addition to the constituent elements listed above, adverbs or adverbial phrases may also be used in an unmarked, simple declarative sentence.

3.4. The nominative and the accusative case

The nominative case is used for the subject of a sentence and for predicate nouns in a sentence, e.g.

- (2) *Die coninc trooste elegast wel.* (16:5)
 the king supported Elegast well
 'The king supported Elegast well.'

- (3) *Het es coninc van hemelrike.* (3:29)
 It is king of heaven
 'It is King of Heaven.'

In Middle Dutch, the nominative is also the case that designates a person or an object addressed, e.g.

- (4) *Stant op, heer,*
 get up lord
Ende en slape nyet meer. (4:27-28)
 and neg. part. sleep not anymore
 'Get up, Lord, and do not sleep anymore.'
- (5) *O zuyderste lucht die my beraeyt* (11:9)
 oh southern air which me beams.upon
 'Oh, southern air, which beams upon me'

The direct object of a sentence is expressed in the accusative case, e.g.

- (6) *Nu comt ende siet den jonghelinc.* (6:4)
 now come and watch the young boy
 'Now come and watch the young boy.'

Some prepositions are followed by an object in the accusative case, e.g. *dore* 'through', *naer* 'towards', *omme* 'around, about', *op* 'on, upon', *onder* 'under', *over* 'over', *sonder* 'without', e.g. *onder zijn ghewant* 'under his clothing', *sonder twifel* 'without any doubt'

In adverbial phrases, the accusative is used to express the space and time over which an action extends, e.g.

- (7) *Si ghingen straten ende paden.*
 They went streets and paths
 'They went on streets and paths.'
- (8) *Si vochten ene lange pose.*
 they fought a long while
 'They fought for a long while.'

3.5. Strong feminine nouns

The reading passage at the beginning of this chapter contains several strong feminine nouns, e.g. *dracht* 'newborn child', *nacht* 'night', *clærheyt* 'glare, lustre', *onmacht* 'swoon, faint', *bliscap* 'joy, gladness'.

Table 7 illustrates the declensional pattern of strong feminine nouns:

Table 7. The declension pattern of strong feminine nouns

	singular	plural
N	<i>nacht</i> 'night'	<i>nachte</i>
A	<i>nacht</i>	<i>nachte</i>
D	<i>nacht</i>	<i>nachten</i>
G	<i>nacht</i>	<i>nachte</i>

Special features of the above case and number categories include:

1. dative/genitive singular:

In prepositional phrases one may still find the presence of the older ending *e*: e.g. *met crachte* 'by force', *bi nachte* 'at night'.

2. nominative/accusative plural:

Just as is the case with the masculine and neuter strong declension, a plural form in *en* tends to replace the historically motivated ending *e*. Thus, nom. pl. *hude* and *huden* 'skins' both occur in Middle Dutch texts.

3.6. The simple demonstrative *die* and the definite article

The simple demonstrative *die* also serves as the definite article, e.g. *die esel* 'the donkey', *die scone zale* 'the beautiful palace'. Table 8 indicates the declension of the simple demonstrative *die* and the definite article. Note that for demonstrative use, only forms with *ie* are used, except in the gen. m./nt. sg., where *des* occurs most frequently:

Table 8. The simple demonstrative *die* and the definite article

	singular masculine	singular feminine	singular neuter	plural all genders
N	<i>die, de</i>	<i>die, de</i>	<i>dat</i>	<i>die, de</i>
A	<i>dien, den</i>	<i>die, de</i>	<i>dat</i>	<i>die, de</i>
D	<i>dien, den</i>	<i>der, dier</i>	<i>dien, den</i>	<i>dien, den</i>
G	<i>des, dies</i>	<i>der, dier(e)</i>	<i>des, dies</i>	<i>der, dier</i>

e.g. *in de crebbe* (acc. f. sg.) 'in the manger', *die inghel* (nom. m. sg.) 'the angel', *dien kinde* (dat. nt. sg.) '(to) that child', *de ghedachte* (acc. f. sg.) 'the thought';

When used as a definite article, clitic forms of *die, de* often occur. Such clitics are connected with the preceding or following stressed word and are pronounced with that word as one phonetic unit, e.g. *imeer* 'the lake', *dbloet* 'the blood'. The following forms frequently occur in Middle Dutch texts:
die, de: corresponds to clitic *d*, e.g. *daventure* (< *de* + *aventure*) 'the adventure', *darmen* (< *de* + *armen*) 'the poor (people)', *deen* (< *de* + *een*) 'the one'.

dat: (1) corresponds to clitic *t*, which could trigger devoicing of the initial consonant of the following word, e.g. *tgesichte* 'the face' (note that the spelling does not mirror the devoicing of initial *g*), *tfelt* 'the field' (*velt* 'field'), *tconfoort* 'the relief, the help', *int crijt* 'in the circle'. (2) corresponds to clitic *d*, usually before vowels, *b*, *l*, and *w*, e.g. *dlant* 'the country', *dwater* 'the water', *doghe* 'the eye'.

des: corresponds to clitic *ts*, *ds* or *s*, e.g. *sbiscops* '(of) the bishop', *sconinx* '(of) the king', *tsmans* '(of) the man', *dsduvels* '(of) the devil'.

The initial consonant of the clitic article is devoiced when it follows a voiceless consonant, e.g. *opten* (< *op* + *den*) 'on the', *metten* (< *met* + *den*) 'with the', *metter* (< *met* + *der*) 'with the', *tien* (< *te* + *dien*) 'at that', *ter* (< *te* + *der*) 'at the', *dattie* (< *dat* + *die*) 'that the', *uten* (< *ute* + *den*) 'out of the', *entie* (< *ende* + *die*) 'and the', *entat* (< *ende* + *dat*) 'and the'. (Note the apocope

in the last three examples.) Following a voiced consonant or a vowel: *vander* (< *van* + *der*) 'from the', *bider* (< *bi* + *der*) 'with the, near the';

3.7. The indefinite article

The numeral *een* 'one' also functions as the indefinite article. The declension of *een* is as indicated in Table 9:

Table 9. The indefinite article

	masculine	feminine	neuter
N	<i>een, ene</i>	<i>een, ene</i>	<i>een, ene</i>
A	<i>enen</i>	<i>een, ene</i>	<i>een, ene</i>
D	<i>enen</i>	<i>eenre, ere</i>	<i>enen</i>
G	<i>eens</i>	<i>eenre, ere</i>	<i>eens</i>

e.g. *ene saleghe dracht* (nom. f. sg.) 'a blessed newborn child', *een kint* (nom. nt. sg.) 'a child', *in ene crebbe* (acc. f. sg.) 'in a manger';

The negation of the indefinite article *een* is *(ne)gheen* 'not a, no'. *(ne)gheen* is declined like *een*, e.g. *ghene dinc* 'not a thing, nothing', *gheen clerc* 'no cleric'.

Chapter 4

Hendrik van Veldeke

4.1. Reading and textual analysis: *Sint Servaes Legende* [The Legend of Saint Servatus]

The first complete work of medieval Dutch literature is a text from Limburg, dating back to the years 1160-1170. It is a hagiography, recounting the legend of Saint Servatus (died 384), the patron Saint of the city of Maastricht. The poem was written by Hendrik van Veldeke, a knight who grew up in that region and who later resided at the Thuringian court. He was probably born between 1140 and 1150, and died prior to 1210. Veldeke's principal work, the *Eneit*, is written in Middle High German. Some lyric poems in his hand are also extant.

Sint Servaes Legende [The Legend of Saint Servatus] is an adaptation from a Latin source and contains two parts. The first part deals with the life of Saint Servatus, while the second part relates the subsequent history of the bishopric of Maastricht, the miracles performed by Servatus, and the worship of him as a Saint.

The reading excerpt for this chapter is taken from the second part. Several years after the death of Servatus, the inhabitants of Maastricht have opened his coffin in order to give him a more honorable burial place. To their astonishment, they find a bright and warm corpse.

- 1 *Sij lietens gode gewalden*
 Ende wouden op halden
 Den heilighen lichame
 In ons heren christus name
5 *Ende in sijnen vrede.*
 Doen woerden alle sijne lede
 Als eyn gloyende yser heyt-
 Des men die waerheit wale weyt-
 Dat welck dat ligt inden colen
10 *Dat en mochten sij nyet verdolen:*
 Sy moesten den lichame laten staen
 Doen sijne vonden soe ghedaen.
 Des waert groot haer rouwe
 Ende haer yamer euen nouwe.

- 15 *Sij vreysden sich sonder mate*
 Went datse die prelaten
 Gheysteliken troosten.
 Sij loefden gode den hoechsten
 Mit herten ende mit tonghen;
 20 *Scone psalmen dat sij songhen*
 Daer men gode mede vleet:
 Dat vers dat daer geschreuen steet
 Dat spreect: "exurge domine".
 Hon was sachte ende wee,
 25 *Sij waren rouwich ende vroe.*
 Het spreect in dutschen alsoe
 "Stant op, heer,
 Ende en slape nyet meer."

- 1 *lietens*: *lieten* + *es*; *lieten*: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *laten* 'to let, allow'; *es*: cl. pron. 'it' (object of *gewalden*)
 gode: (irr.) acc. m. sg. of *god* 'God'
 gewalden: inf. (+ gen.) 'to arrange, settle'
 2 *wouden*: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *willen* 'to want, wish'
 op halden: inf. 'to lift up, raise'
 3 *heilighen*: adj. *heilich* 'holy, sacred'
 lichame: acc. m. sg. of *lichame* 'body'
 4 *ons*: poss. adj. *ons* 'our'
 heren: gen. m. sg. of *here* 'Lord'
 name: acc./dat. m. sg. of *name* 'name'
 5 *vrede*: acc./dat. m. sg. of *vrede* 'peace, tranquility'
 6 *doen*: adv. 'then'
 woerden: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *werden* 'to become'
 lede: nom. nt. pl. of *lit* 'limb, member'
 7 *als*: conj. 'as, like'
 eyn = *een*
 gloyende: pres. p. of *gloyen* 'to glow, be red-hot'
 yser: nom. nt. sg. 'iron, object made of iron'
 heyt: adj. *heyt* 'hot'
 8 *waerheit*: acc. f. sg. of *waerheit* 'truth'
 wale: adv. 'well'
 weyt: subj. I, 3rd sg. of *weyten* (+ gen.; usually spelled *weten*) 'to know'
 9 *dat welck dat*: rel. pron. 'which'
 ligt: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *ligghen* 'to lie'
 colen: dat. f. pl. of *cole* 'coal'
 10 *mochten*: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *mogen* 'may, shall, ought to'
 verdolen: inf. 'to endure, bear'

- 11 *moesten*: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *moeten* 'to have to'
laten staen: 'to leave, keep off'
- 12 *doen*: conj. 'when'
sijne: *si* + *ne*; *si*: pers. pron. 'they'; *ne*: cl. pron. 'him'
vonden: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *vinden* 'to find'
soe ghedaen: '(done) in this way'
- 13 *waert*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *werden* 'to become'
rouwe: nom. m. sg. 'sadness, regret'
- 14 *yamer*: nom. m./nt. sg. 'misery, distress'
euen: adv. 'equally, as'
nouwe: adj. *nouwe*, here: 'burdensome, heavy'
- 15 *vreysden sich*: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *vreysen* (refl.) 'to be afraid, dread'
sonder mate: 'infinitely, without limits'
- 16 *went datse*: *went dat* + *se*; *went dat*: conj. 'until'; *se*: cl. pron. 'them'
prelaten: nom. m. pl. of *prelate*, *prelaet* 'prelate'
- 17 *gheysteliken*: adj. *gheystelijc* 'clerical, ecclesiastical'
troosten: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *troosten* 'to comfort, console'
- 18 *loefden*: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *loeven* 'to praise, glorify'
hoechsten: superl. of *hoech*, *hoge* 'high'
mit = *met*
- 19 *herten*: dat. nt. pl. of *herte* 'heart'
tonghen: dat. f. pl. of *tonghe*, *tonc* 'tongue'
- 20 *scone*: adj. *scone*, *scoon* 'beautiful'
psalmen: acc. m. pl. of *psalm* 'psalm'
dat: expletive word
songhen: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *singhen* 'to sing'
- 21 *daer ... mede*: rel. adv. 'with which' (antecedent is *scone psalmen*)
vleet: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *vleen* 'to worship'
- 22 *vers*: nom. nt. sg. 'poem, verse'
dat: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *dat vers*)
geschreuen: pp. of *schriuen* 'to write'
steet: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *staen* 'to stand'
- 23 *spreect*: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *spreken* 'to speak, say'
- 24 *hon was sachte ende wee*: 'They were at the same time glad and sad'
- 25 *waren*: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *wesen* 'to be'
rouwich: adj. *rouwich* 'sad, sorrowful'
vroe: adj. *vroe* 'merry, cheerful'
- 26 *in dutschen*: 'in Dutch, in our language'
also: adv. 'so, like this'
- 27 *stant op*: impv. 2nd sg. of *opstanden* 'get up, rise'
- 28 *slape*: impv. 2nd sg. of *slapen* 'to sleep'
nyet meer: adv. 'not (...) anymore'

4.2. Simple declarative sentences

The previous chapter introduced the basic structure of the unmarked, simple declarative sentence, whose constituent elements typically occur in the order: subject + verb (+ object). However, the first position of a Middle Dutch sentence does not have to be filled by the subject. It is possible to topicalize another constituent element in the sentence, such as an adverb or a direct object, by placing it in initial position. In such a case, the verb usually remains in second position, while the subject often occupies the third position, e.g.

- (9) *Met dieren stenen ende met gemme*
 with valuable stones and with gems
Scierden die goutsmede haer werke. (2:7-8)
 decorated the goldsmiths their work
 'With valuable stones and gems the goldsmiths decorated their work.'
- (10) *Dat sal hi becopen saen.* (9:6)
 that will he atone.for immediately
 'For that he will immediately atone.'
- (11) *Dies leet hi groete scande.* (9:16)
 this (G) suffered he large shame
 'For that he suffered much shame.'

4.3. Expletive words

In order to place additional emphasis on a particular phrase within a sentence, an expletive word can immediately follow that phrase. Such an expletive word does not alter the basic meaning of the sentence, and hence it need not be translated into English. Expletive words can occur after a noun phrase or after an adverbial phrase.

(i) The conjunction *dat*:

- (12) *Dat vers dat daer geschreuen steet*
 the verse which there written stands
Dat spreect: "exurge domine". (4:22-23)
 expl. says "exurge domine"
 'The verse which is written there says: exurge domine.'

(ii) The adverb *so*:

- (13) *Also* *ysengrijn* *beiaghede* *een* *calf*
 when Isengrim caught a calf
Of *eenen* *weder* *of* *eenen* *ram*
 or a whether or a ram
So *grongierdi* *ende* *maecte* *hem* *gram.*
 expl. growled.he and made refl. angry
 (12:13-15)
 'When Isengrim caught a calf or a wether or a ram, he growled and became angry.'

- (14) *Den* *helm* *so* *letste* *hi* *wel* *schiere.* (14:9)
 the helmet expl. tied he wel quickly
 'He quickly tied the helmet.'

(iii) The pronoun *die*:

- (15) *Die* *knecht* *die* *heeft* *him* *wech ghestolen.* (15:1)
 the servant expl. has refl. away slipped
 'The servant has slipped away.'

4.4. Weak masculine and neuter nouns

Examples of weak masculine and neuter nouns in the excerpt from Hendrik van Veldeke's *Sint Servaes Legende* are *lichame* 'body', *name* 'name', *here* 'lord', *herte* 'heart'. As mentioned before, the nominative singular form of weak nouns ends in an unstressed *e*. Table 10 illustrates the paradigm of weak masculine nouns:

Table 10. The declension pattern of weak masculine nouns

	singular	plural
N	<i>lichame</i> 'body'	<i>lichamen</i>
A	<i>lichame</i>	<i>lichamen</i>
D	<i>lichame</i>	<i>lichamen</i>
G	<i>lichamen</i>	<i>lichamen</i>

Weak neuter nouns are declined in the same way. Only three weak neuter nouns are found in Middle Dutch: *herte* 'heart', *oghe* 'eye', and *ore* 'ear'. All three are also attested as weak feminine nouns.

Special features of the above case and number categories include the following:

1. Nominative/accusative/dative singular:

The final unstressed *e* may occasionally be apocopated. For example, both *here* and *heer* 'lord' occur.

2. Genitive singular:

In analogy to the declension pattern of strong nouns, the ending *(e)s* sometimes occurs, especially in younger texts, e.g. *des haens* '(of) the rooster'.

Chapter 5

Der Leken Spieghel [Laymen's Mirror]

5.1. Reading and textual analysis: *Der Leken Spieghel* [Laymen's Mirror]

During the Middle Ages, a lot of writings of a moralistic-didactic nature were produced, most of them in verse. Such literature was essentially realistic, so as better to instruct the reader. Middle Dutch didactic literature found its first major representative in Jacob van Maerlant (circa 1230-1290), who purposely turned away from writing epic romances to pursue this genre. Maerlant's works were very popular, and it is beyond any doubt that he influenced many of the didactic poets of the next century. One of these, Jan van Boendale (circa 1280-1350), who explicitly revered Maerlant as "the father of all Dutch poets", was originally from Tervuren in Brabant and became a *scepenclerc* (town-clerk) in Antwerp. Boendale's major work is *Der Leken Spieghel* [Laymen's Mirror] (circa 1325), a poem of more than 20,000 verse-lines which contains all that a fourteenth-century burgher ought to know. Its subject matter is the creation and history of mankind, the origin and development of Christianity, and the end of the world. In addition, it also provides the reader with plenty of advice on good morals and manners. *Der leken spieghel* is perhaps best remembered for its *ars poetica*, of which it is the earliest specimen in Dutch literature. Boendale is also the author of the rhyme chronicle *Die Brabantsche Yeeften* [History of Brabant] and of *Jans Teestye* [Jan's Conviction].

The excerpt below is from the second book of *Der Leken Spieghel*. It relates what happened to Christ's body and soul after his crucifixion and describes the disciples' reaction to the resurrection of their teacher.

- 1 *Maer doe Cristus was verresen*
 Ende hem vertoende dien ende desen
 Vijfwerf opten Paeschdach,
 Daer men met live ane zach,
- 5 *Gheloofden zine jonghers eerst das*
 Dathi met live verresen was.
 Weet ooc, doe Cristus verschieet
 Ende die ziele uten lichame schiet,
 Voeren godheit ende ziele met

- 10 *In die helle al onghelet;*
Nochtan en wert vander godheiden
Cristus lichame nie ghescheiden.
Doe die helle was ghestoort,
Also ghi voren hebt ghehoort,
15 *Keerde die ziele weder af*
Ten lichame in dat graf.
Daer verresen over een
Godheit, ziele ende menscheit ghemeen,
Ghelijc datsi alle te samen
20 *In Marien lichame quamen.*
Nie zeder en schiet die godheit
Van Jhesus Cristus menscheit,
Noch nemmermeer sceden en sal:
Dit zullen wi gheloven al.
- 1 *maer:* conj. 'but, yet'
doe: adv. 'when, at that time'
was verresen: 'had risen'
- 2 *hem vertoende:* ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *vertoenen* (refl.) 'to appear'
desen: dem. pron. 'to this one'
- 3 *vijfwerf:* adv. 'for the fifth time'
Paeschedach: acc. m. sg. of *Paeschedach* 'Easter Sunday'
- 4 *men:* *men* + *en*; *men:* pron. 'one'; *en:* cl. pron. 'him'
live: dat. nt./m. sg. of *lijf* 'life, body'
ane zach: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *ane zien* 'to look at, behold'
- 5 *gheloofden:* ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *gheloven* (+ gen.) 'to believe'
zine: poss. adj. 'his'
jonghers: nom. m. pl. of *jongher* 'disciple'
eerst: adv. 'for the first time'
das = des
- 7 *weet:* impv. 2nd sg./pl. of *weten* 'to know'
ooc: adv. 'also'
verschiet: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *verscheiden* 'to die'
- 8 *ziele:* nom. f. sg. 'soul, spirit'
schiet: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *scheiden* 'to separate, part'
- 9 *voeren:* ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *varen* 'to go, proceed'
godheit: nom. f. sg. 'deity, divinity'
met: adv. 'also, along'
- 10 *helle:* acc. f. sg. of *helle* 'hell'
al: adv. 'fully, entirely'
onghelet: adv. 'directly, immediately'
- 11 *nochtan:* adv. 'however, yet'
wert ... ghescheiden: 'is separated'

- 12 *nie*: adv. 'never'
 13 *was ghestoort*: 'was disturbed, destroyed'
 14 *also*: conj. 'as, like'
ghi: pers. pron. 'you'
voren: adv. 'earlier, before'
hebt ghehoort: 'have heard'
 15 *keerde ... af*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *afkeren* 'to return'
weder: adv. 'again'
 16 *graf*: acc. nt. sg. of *graf* 'grave, tomb'
 17 *verresen*: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *verrisen* 'to rise, resurrect'
over een: adv. 'collectively, simultaneously'
 18 *menscheit*: nom. f. sg. 'human nature, humanity'
ghemeen: adv. 'as one, in unison'
 19 *ghelijc datsi*: *ghelijc dat* + *si*; *ghelijc dat*: conj. 'just as'; *si*: cl. pron. 'they'
te samen: adv. 'together'
 20 *quamen*: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *comen* 'to come'
 21 *zeder*: adv. 'since that time'
noch: conj. 'nor'
 23 *nemmermeer*: adv. 'never again'
sceden ... sal: 'will separate'
 24 *dit*: dem. pron. 'this'
zullen ... gheloven: 'will believe'
al: adv. 'completely'

5.2. The subject

The subject of a Middle Dutch sentence is expressed in the nominative case. It is occasionally expressed in the accusative case, which may be surprising to modern readers. The subject position can also be filled by repletive (empty) *het* as shown by examples (16) and (17). In this usage, *het* is best translated into English as "there", e.g.

- (16) *Hen* [*< het + en*] *es* *gheen* *clerc* *in*
 there + neg. part. is no learned.person in
al Parijs. (13:6)
 all Paris
 'There is not a learned person in all of Paris.'
- (17) *Hen* *was* *noit* *man* *die* *danen*
 there. neg. part. was never man who from.there

sciet (17:25)

returned

'There has never been a man who returned from there.'

The subject of a Middle Dutch clause can be deleted if:

(i) the finite verb is an impersonal verb. In (18) - (20), *mi* and *hon* are pronouns in the dative case:

(18) *Mi en was nie soe wel*
 me (D) neg. part. was never so well
te moede. (6:7)
 at.heart
 'I never felt so well.'

(19) *Mi lanct na di.*
 me (D) longs for you
 'I am longing for you.'

(20) *Hon was sachte ende wee.* (4:24)
 them (D) was sweet and painful
 'They felt both happy and sad.'

(ii) the verb is in the imperative mood ("you" command):

(21) *Ne vruchte niet.* (3:15)
 neg. part. fear not
 'Do not fear!'

(22) *Hoghelijc weest ende lacht.* (3:17)
 happy be and laugh
 'Be happy and rejoice!'

(iii) the conjunction *ende* 'and' introduces the clause. In this instance, the logical subject has been stated earlier in the sentence:

(23) *Die esel liet daer siin eten staen*
 the donkey left there its food standing
Ende viel in knieghebede saen. (3:5-6)
 and fell on prayer.on.knees immediately
 'The donkey left its food behind there and immediately fell down on its knees in prayer.'

- (24) *Viere dieve quamen naesten ane mi*
 four robbers came recently towards me
Ende wilden hebben mijn part. (17:10-11)
 and wanted have my horse
 'Four robbers came towards me not long ago and wanted to have my horse.'

(iv) it is apparent from the context what the subject is.

(v) the unstated subject would have been repletive (empty) *het*:

- (25) *En was creature ne gene. (2:1)*
 neg. part. was creature no
 'There was no creature.'

5.3. The dative case

The dative case marks indirect objects, the complements of certain adjectives, and the objects of certain prepositions.

The dative case is used to express the indirect object of the clause. Middle Dutch verbs which take an object in the dative may belong to the following semantic fields:

- (i) to give, take, e.g. *beteren* 'to indemnify', *gheven* 'to give', *lenen* 'to loan', *brenghen* 'to bring'.
- (ii) to tell, e.g. *segghen* 'to say', *antwoorden* 'to answer', *scriven* 'to write', *melden* 'to announce'.
- (iii) to command, prohibit, e.g. *ghebieden* 'to order', *ghewaren* 'to grant, allow', *laten* 'to permit, allow'.
- (iv) to be (un)friendly, (un)pleasant, e.g. *behagen* 'to please', *mishagen* 'to displease', *smaken* 'to taste'.
- (v) to be fitting, correspond to, e.g. *gheliken* 'to resemble', *slachten* 'to take after', *behoren* 'to belong'.
- (vi) to believe, trust, obey, e.g. *gheloven* 'to believe', *betrouwen* 'to trust', *dienen* 'to serve'.

(vii) to approach, avoid, e.g. *ontgaen* 'to escape', *naercomen* 'to approach, draw near'.

Examples of sentences with finite verbs accompanied by a dative object are:

- (26) *Dit hevet men Waleweyne brocht.* (13:15)
 this has one to Waleweyn brought
 'One has brought this to Waleweyn.'
- (27) *Daer es die minste soe volmaect,*
 there is the least so perfect
Datter zielen niet en smaect
 that.to the soul nothing neg. part. tastes
Dan Gode te minnen sonder inde. (21:23-24)
 than God to love without end
 'There the smallest [joy] is so perfect, that nothing is as appetizing to the soul as endlessly loving God.'
- (28) *Men mach hen niet ghelooeven.* (10:11)
 one.neg. part. may them not believe
 'One must not believe them.'
- (29) *En ufent niemene.* (10:11)
 neg. part. worship nobody
 'Do not worship anyone.'
- (30) *Als hem die reyne[n] naken.* (19:60)
 when him the pure.ones approach
 'When the pure ones approach him.'

Certain adjectives govern the dative case. These may be derived from or be paraphrases of verbs that govern the dative, e.g. *betame* 'suitable, becoming', *ghelike* 'similar', e.g.

- (31) *Want hi hem wel ware betame*
 since it him wel would.be suitable
Met te rijdene in zinen lande. (9:14-15)
 with.it to ride in his land
 'Since it seemed suitable for him to ride with it to his land.'
- (32) *Die minste bliscap in hemelrike*
 the least joy in heaven

<i>En</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>hier</i>	<i>ghere</i>	<i>vrouden ghelike.</i>
neg. part.	is	here	no	pleasure similar
(21:21-22)				

'The least joy in heaven is not similar to any pleasure here.'

The following prepositions are usually followed by an object in the dative: *beneden* 'under', *bi* 'by, near', *met* 'with', *te* 'at, in', *ute* 'out of, from', *sints* 'since', *van* 'from'; e.g. *van edelen bloede* 'of noble blood', *met eere vremder newer spise* 'with a strange new fare'.

Some adverbial expressions occur in the dative case, e.g. *langhen tijt* 'for a long time', *alle weghe* 'everywhere'.

5.4. Weak feminine nouns

Weak feminine nouns end in unstressed *e*, e.g. *helle* 'hell', *tonghe* 'tongue', *crebbe* 'manger', *sonde* 'sin'. Table 11 exemplifies the declension pattern of weak feminine noun: (Parentheses indicate that the final *n* is often dropped.)

Table 11. The declension pattern of weak feminine nouns

	singular	plural
N	<i>ziele</i> 'soul'	<i>zielen</i>
A	<i>ziele</i>	<i>zielen</i>
D	<i>ziele(n)</i>	<i>zielen</i>
G	<i>ziele(n)</i>	<i>zielen</i>

Note that the originally weak neuter nouns *herte* 'heart', *oghe* 'eye', and *ore* 'ear' are often declined like *ziele* 'soul'.

5.5. The demonstratives *dese* and *ghene* 'this'

Both *dese* and *ghene* (regional variants: *ghone*, *ghuene*) have demonstrative meaning and may be used as limiting adjectives or as pronouns. Tables 12 and 13 indicate their declension patterns:

Table 12. The paradigm of *dese* 'this'

	singular masculine	singular feminine	singular neuter	plural all genders
N	<i>dese</i>	<i>dese</i>	<i>dit</i>	<i>dese</i>
A	<i>desen</i>	<i>dese</i>	<i>dit</i>	<i>dese</i>
D	<i>desen</i>	<i>derre</i>	<i>desen</i>	<i>desen</i>
G	<i>des</i>	<i>derre</i>	<i>des</i>	<i>derre</i>

Some variants are attested in the genitive case:

1. Genitive masculine/neuter singular: *deses* may be found in younger manuscripts.
2. Genitive feminine singular: *deser*, *desere* sometimes occur.

Table 13. The paradigm of *ghene* 'this'

	singular masculine	singular feminine	singular neuter	plural all genders
N	<i>ghene</i> , <i>gheen</i>	<i>ghene</i>	<i>gheent</i> , <i>gheen</i>	<i>ghene</i>
A	<i>ghenen</i>	<i>ghene</i>	<i>gheent</i> , <i>gheen</i>	<i>ghene</i>
D	<i>ghenen</i>	<i>gherre</i> , <i>ghere</i>	<i>ghenen</i>	<i>ghenen</i>
G	<i>gheens</i>	<i>gherre</i> , <i>ghere</i>	<i>gheens</i>	<i>gherre</i> , <i>ghere</i>

The demonstrative *gheen* should not be confused with the negation of the definite article, (*ne*)*gheen* 'not a, no'. The latter was originally a compound which consisted of the negative *nech* and *een* 'a, one', e.g.

- (33) *Hen* *es* *gheen* *clerc.* (13:6)
 there.neg. part. is no learned.person
 'There is not a learned person.'

Chapter 6

Esmoreit

6.1. Reading and textual analysis: *Esmoreit*

Four Middle Dutch plays occupy a unique position in the history of Western European literature, as they are the oldest specimens of serious secular drama. They are generally referred to as *Abele Spelen* [noble or beautiful plays], since the introduction to each play contains this designation. Little is known with certainty about these plays. Some scholars have speculated that they may be the work of several writers, and the origin of the genre is obscure. It has been suggested that the plays are translations from (lost) French originals. This, however, could only be proved if such French texts were to be discovered. The Middle Dutch plays probably originated in South Brabant during the second half of the fourteenth century.

Three of the four plays, *Lanseloet van Denemarken*, *Gloriant*, and *Esmoreit*, are set in exotic environments and depict the joys and sorrows of courtly love. Their main characters are queens and kings, princesses and princes. The fourth play, *Van den Winter ende van den Somer* [The Winter and the Summer], is an allegorical dialogue between Summer and Winter, whose topic is whether Winter or Summer be more beneficial to the human race. Ultimately Venus intercedes to settle the argument.

Performances of the *Abele Spelen* are sometimes mentioned in Flemish and Brabantic city records. Typically such performances were followed by a rather coarse farce, six of which accompany the plays in the *Hulthemse Manuscript* [Manuscript of Hulthem], which is our only extant source for the *Abele Spelen*.

The reading selection below is taken from *Esmoreit*. Robberecht, who had hopes of becoming the heir to his uncle's kingdom of Sicily, sees his dream vanish when the king's first son is born. In an effort to restore his status as the heir to the kingdom, Robberecht sells the newborn infant, named Esmoreit, to a foreign court. Young Esmoreit is brought up at the court of the King of Damascus, who raises him as a brother to his daughter, Damiet. In this excerpt, the king of Damascus sees Esmoreit for the first time, whereupon he is warned by the astrologer Platus against revealing Esmoreit's true identity to Damiet.

- 1 *Meester.*
 Waer sidi, hoghe gheborne wigant,
 Van Damast gheweldich coninc?
 Nu comt ende siet den jonghelinc,
 5 *Die gheboren es van edelen bloede.*
 De coninc.
 Nu en was mi nie soe wel te moede,
 Alst es van desen hoghen prosent.
 Ic salne ophouden voor mijn kint;
 10 *Mine dochter salicken bevelen.*
 Meester.
 Wattan, her coninc, ghi selt helen
 Voer uwe dochter al gader,
 Wie sijn moeder es ende sijn vader;
 15 *Dat en seldi haer vertrecken niet,*
 Want u mochte daer af verdriet
 Comen hier namaels over lanc,
 Want vrouwen sijn van herten wanc.
 Seidi hare sijn hoghe gheslachte,
 20 *Ende dan Venus in haer wrachte,*
 Ende worde minnende den jongen man,
 Soe mochte si hem segghen dan
 Hoe dat hi ware comen hier;
 Want, her coninc, der minnen vier
 25 *Mochte in uwer dochter openbaren,*
 Als hi ware comen te sinen jaren.
 Daer omme en segt haer ghene dinc
 Dan dat hi es een vondelinc:
 Te min soe salder haer gheliggan an.
 30 *De coninc.*
 Platus, Platus, bi Tervogant,
 Het dunct mi goet dat ghi mi segt.

- 1 *meester:* nom. m. sg. 'master, title for the astrologer, Platus'
 2 *waer:* interrog. pron. 'where'
 sidi: *sijd* + *i*; *sijd:* ind. 2nd pl. of *sijn* 'to be'; *i:* cl. pron. 'you'
 hoghe: adv. 'highly'
 gheborne: pp. 'born'
 wigant: nom. m. sg. 'warrior, fighter'
 3 *Damast:* proper name 'Damascus'
 4 *nu:* adv. 'now'
 comt: impv. 2nd pl. of *comen* 'to come'
 siet: impv. 2nd pl. of *sien* 'to see, look at'
 jonghelinc: acc. m. sg. of *jonghelinc* 'young man'

- 5 *die*: rel. pron. 'who' (antecedent is *den jonghelinc*)
edelen: adj. *edel, edele* 'noble'
bloede: dat. m. sg. of *bloet* 'blood'
- 7 *en was mi nie soe wel te moede*: 'I never was in such high spirits.'
- 8 *alst*: *alse+ et*; *alse*: conj. 'as, like'; *et*: cl. pron. 'it'
hoghen: adj. *hooch, hoghe* 'high'
prosent: dat. nt. sg. of *prosent* 'present, gift'
- 9 *salne ophouden*: 'shall raise him'
voor: prep., here: 'like, as'
mijn: poss. adj. 'my'
- 10 *mine dochter salicken bevelen*: 'I shall put him under the care of my daughter.'
- 12 *wattan*: interj. 'what!'
her: nom. m. sg. 'Lord'
selt helen: 'will hide'
- 13 *voer*: prep. 'from'
uwe: poss. adj. 'your'
al gader: adv. 'altogether, entirely'
- 14 *wie*: conj. 'who'
moeder: nom. f. sg. 'mother'
vader: nom. m. sg. 'father'
- 15 *seldi ... vertrecken*: 'you will tell'
haer: pers. pron. '(to) her'
- 16 *want*: conj. 'for, because'
u: pers. pron. '(to) you'
mochte ... comen: 'might come'
daer af: pron. adv. 'from that'
- 17 *verdriet*: nom. nt./m. sg. 'sorrow, grief'
hier namaels: adv. 'afterwards, later on'
- 18 *over lanc*: adv. 'in course of time, in due course'
vrouwen: nom. f. pl. of *vrouwe* 'woman'
- 19 *wanc*: adj. *wanc* 'frail, weak'
seidi hare: 'If you told her about ...'
- 20 *gheslachte*: acc. nt. sg. of *gheslachte* 'ancestry, lineage'
dan: adv. 'then'
- 21 *wrachte*: subj. II, 3rd sg. of *werken* 'to act, work'
worde: subj. II, 3rd sg. of *werden* 'to become' (The subject is *Damiet*, the king's daughter.)
minnende: pres. p. of *minnen* 'to love'
- 22 *jongen*: adj. *jonc* 'young'
man: acc. m. sg. of *man* 'man'
- 23 *mochte ... segghen*: 'might say'
hem: pers. pron. '(to) him'
- 23 *hoe dat*: conj. 'how'

- ware comen*: 'had come'
hier: adv. 'here'
24 *minnen*: gen. f. sg. of *minne* '(courtly) love'
vier: nom. m. sg. 'fire'
25 *mochte ... openbaren*: 'might appear'
26 *als hi ware comen te sinen jaren*: 'when he will be grown to maturity'
27 *daer omme*: adv. 'therefore'
en ... ghene dinc: 'nothing'
segt: impv. 2nd pl. of *segghen* 'to say'
28 *dan*: conj. 'but, except'
vondelinc: nom. m. sg. 'foundling'
29 *te min soe salder haer gheliggen an*: 'The less she will be interested in him.'
31 *Tervogant*: proper name (of a pagan deity)
32 *het dunct mi goet*: 'It seems good to me.'
dat: indef. rel. pron. 'what'
segt: ind. 2nd pl. pres. of *segghen* 'to say'

6.2. Prepositional phrases and pronominal adverbs

Most prepositions in Middle Dutch take objects in either the accusative or in the dative case. Consistency in the usage of one and the same case following a given preposition is often wanting. Examples of prepositional phrases encountered so far are: *van edelen bloede* (6:5) 'of noble blood', *in uwer dochter* (6:25) '(with)in your daughter', *van finen marbre* (2:11) 'of fine marble', *in de crebbe* (3:1) 'in the manger';

The following prepositions often govern the accusative case: *dore* 'through, because of', *naer* 'towards', *omme* 'around, about', *op* 'on, upon', *onder* 'under', *over* 'over', *sonder* 'without'. Prepositions that frequently take an object in the dative case are: *beneden* 'under', *bi* 'by, near', *met* 'with', *te* 'at, in', *ute* 'out of, from', *sints* 'since', *van* 'of, from';

Few prepositions occasionally take an object in the genitive case, as in the following expressions, e.g. *binnen lants* 'within the land', *buten huses* 'outside', *na des*, *na das* 'after that, next', *onder des* 'in the meanwhile, by that time', *omme des* 'hence, on that account'. Note that these prepositions usually take objects in the accusative or dative case.

Speakers of English may encounter some problems in the Middle Dutch usage of pronominal adverbs. Pronominal adverbs are compounds whose first element is *daer*, *dar* (clitic form: *er*) or *hier*, followed by a preposition. They

are used when the prepositional object does not contain a noun. Pronominal adverbs are best translated into English by means of a preposition and an anaphoric pronoun, e.g.

- (34) *Si en stonder in gescreven. (2:2)*
 it neg. part. stood.in.it written
 'It was written on it.'

- (35) *Ende also die sonne daer ane sceen (2:20)*
 and when the sun on.it shone
 'And when the sun shone on it'

- (36) *Maect ons hier af een gestille. (17:4)*
 make us of.this a silence
 'Do not talk about this to us.'

6.3. Minor noun declensions

A few nouns display inflectional patterns that are neither strong nor weak. Such nouns are best viewed as exceptions. Traditionally, grammars distinguish three groups of irregular nouns:

(i) nouns which end in *er* and indicate kinship, i.e. *broeder* 'brother', *dochter* 'daughter', *gebroeder* 'siblings, brothers', *moeder* 'mother', *suster* 'sister', *vader* 'father'.

(ii) *nd*-stems, i.e. *vrient* 'friend' and *viant* 'enemy'

(iii) *man* 'man'

Historically these nouns do not take any endings in the singular and in the nominative and accusative plural. In the dative plural, they take *en* (e.g. nominative feminine singular *moeder* 'mother'; dative plural *moed(en)en*). The genitive plural ending is *e* (e.g. nominative masculine singular *vrient* 'friend' genitive plural *vriende*). Table 14 exemplifies the declension pattern of these nouns by means of *moeder* 'mother':

Table 14. The declension pattern of *moeder* 'mother'

	singular	plural
N	<i>moeder</i> 'mother'	<i>moeder</i>
A	<i>moeder</i>	<i>moeder</i>
D	<i>moeder</i>	<i>moed(e)ren</i>
G	<i>moeder</i>	<i>moed(e)re</i>

In several Middle Dutch documents these nouns are also attested with inflectional endings borrowed from the strong and weak nominal declension, e.g. nominative plural *moeders* 'mothers'.

6.4. Proper names

Proper names denoting female beings follow the weak declension, e.g. *in Marien lichame* (5:20) 'in Mary's body', *met sinen wiue vrouwe harsenden* (12:26) 'with his wife, Dame Hersent';

For male beings, a distinction is made between names ending in a consonant, which are usually strong, and those that end in a vowel, which may be weak: *van Salomoene* (2:15) 'of Solomon', *ihesus min* (19:56, gen.) 'Jesus's love'; nom. *Otte*, dat. *Otten*, gen. *Otten*, but also *Ottes*.

6.5. Diminutive formation

kijn, *kyn*, *ken* can be affixed to nouns in order to convey diminutive meaning. As a rule, diminutives are strong neuter nouns, e.g. *vogelkijn* 'little bird', *hertken* 'little heart'. Note that the diminutive *kindekijn*, *kindekyn* 'little child' has an irregular plural: *kinderkine*.

Chapter 7

Anthonis de Roovere (I)

7.1. Reading and textual analysis: Anthonis de Roovere

To a large extent a survey of the literary activity of the fifteenth century is dominated by the poetry and plays produced by members of the *Rederijerskamers* (Chambers of Rhetoric). These Chambers, which were especially active in the southern part of the Low Countries, were guild-like associations for middle-class writers and they existed in nearly all larger cities. Chambers could have as little as ten or twelve members, or as many as several hundred. Among the members of the Chamber, the offices of *prins* 'prince' or *keizer* 'emperor', and the *factor* 'maker' were especially important: The *prins* or *keizer* was a prominent, wealthy citizen, who was responsible for administrative matters. The *factor* wrote plays for contests and performances and was instrumental in the production. The Chambers had their own standard with a coat of arms and a motto. Similar guild-like organizations for writers already existed as early as the twelfth century in Northern France, and it may be that the Chambers of Rhetoric were their Dutch equivalent. Some scholars believe, however, that the associations which helped the clergy in staging religious plays and processions may have developed into the Chambers of Rhetoric.

The chief activity of the *Rederijers* (Rhetoricians) was the production of poetry and plays for performances in the city. In Brabant, contests between the Chambers of different cities were organized, in which the contestants had to submit entries on an assigned theme. Among the most famous *Rederijers*-productions are the plays *Mariken van Nieumeghen* [Mary of Nijmegen] and *Elckerlijc* [Everyman]. The latter won the first prize at the Antwerp *Rederijker* contest, probably around the year 1496.

The Rhetoricians placed the main emphasis of their poetry on its form. Their favorite form was the *refrein* 'refrain', which usually consisted of five to ten stanzas. Each stanza contained between eight to twenty lines, and all stanzas ended in the same verse line, called *stock*. (The reading passage for Chapter 11 provides an example of such a refrain.) The *Rederijers* experimented a lot with poetry, as in the *aldicht*, in which each word of a verse line is rhymed with each word of the following verse line. Needless to say, a large number of poems have more historical value than literary merit. However, one should not underestimate the impact of the Rhetoricians on the

history of Dutch literature. Several advances in literary technique were made, and the preoccupation with rhyme scheme and imagery led to the creation of new literary forms.

The Chambers also had some truly gifted writers among their members. One such poet, Anthonis de Roovere (circa 1430-1482), became a member of the Chamber of Bruges at the age of seventeen. He is the author of "Testament van een Goede Vrouwe" [Last Will of a Good Woman]. More information on Anthonis de Roovere is provided in Chapter 11.

Testament van een goede vrouwe

- 1 *Simpel / ghesedich van ghelate*
 Niemant te merckene op de strate
 Stille van woorde / van spraecke schaers
 Rechtuaerdich, sonder waeniewaers
 5 *Deuotelijck wesende inder kercken*
 Ende thuys doen goede ghewercken
 Sober van drancke / ende van ate
 In al haer doen houdende mate
 Gheuen noch nemen / van gheenen man
 10 *Dan daer zijt met eeren doen can*
 Van moede minnelijck ende sachte
 Voorsinnich / ende suyuer int ghedachte
 Houdende haer eere stijf met trouwe
 Dan wordise ghepresen een goede vrouwe.

- 1 *simpel*: adj. *simpel* 'simple, natural'
 ghesedich: adj. *ghesedich* 'modest, quiet'
 ghelate: dat. nt. sg. of *ghelaet* 'appearance, looks'
 2 *niemant*: pron. 'nobody'
 te merckene: 'to notice'
 op: prep. 'on'
 strate: acc. f. sg. of *strate* 'street'
 3 *stille*: adj. *stille* 'silent, quiet'
 woorde: dat. nt. sg. of *woort* 'word'
 spraecke: dat. f. sg. of *spraecke* 'speech'
 schaers: adj. *schaers* 'sparing, frugal'
 4 *rechtuaerdich*: adj. *rechtuaerdich* 'just, righteous'
 sonder waeniewaers: 'without hypocrisy'
 5 *deuotelijck*: adj. *deuotelijck* 'pious, devout'
 wesende: pres. p. of *wesen* 'to be'
 kercken: dat. f. sg. of *kercke* 'church'
 6 *thuys*: adv. 'at home'
 doen: inf. 'to do'

- 7 *ghewercken*: acc. nt. pl. of *ghewerck* 'deed, action'
sober: adj. *sober* 'moderate, temperate'
drancke: dat. m. sg. of *dranck* 'drink'
ate: dat. f. sg. of *ate* 'food, fare'
- 8 *al*: pron. 'all'
doen: acc. nt. sg. of *doen* 'action, deed'
houdende: pres. p. of *houden* 'to keep'
mate: acc. f. sg. of *mate* 'moderation, temperance'
- 9 *gheven*: inf. 'to give'
noch: conj. 'nor'
nemen: inf. 'to take'
- 10 *dan daer zijt met eeren doen can*: 'except where she can do it with honor'
- 11 *moede*: dat. m. sg. of *moet* 'mind, heart'
minnelijck: adj. *minnelijck* 'loving, affectionate'
sachte: adj. *sachte* 'gentle, mild-tempered'
- 12 *voorsinnich*: adj. *voorsinnich* 'sensible, wise'
suyuer: adj. *suyuer* 'pure, unblemished'
ghedachte: acc. nt. sg. of *ghedachte* 'spirit, mind'
- 13 *haer*: poss. pron. 'her'
houdende ... stijf: 'adhering rigidly'
trouwe: dat. f. sg. of *trouwe* 'fidelity, loyalty'
- 14 *dan*: adv. 'then'
wordtse ghepresen: 'she is praised (as)'

7.2. Middle Dutch adjectives

Middle Dutch adjectives end either in a consonant or in unstressed *e*, e.g.

(a) ending in a consonant: *groet* 'big, large', *heyt* 'hot', *clær* 'strong, clear', *lat* 'lazy', *minnelijck* 'loving, affectionate', *salech* 'blessed, blissful', *rechtvaerdich* 'just, righteous', *roet* 'red', *wanc* 'frail, weak'.

(b) ending in unstressed *e*: *blauwe* 'blue', *diere* 'expensive, costly', *groene* 'green', *nouwe* 'oppressive, burdensome', *stille* 'silent, quiet'.

The undeclined form of some adjectives may be attested both with and without final *e*, e.g. *hooch*, *hoghe* 'high', *rijc*, *rike* 'rich wealthy'.

In discussing adjective endings of older Germanic languages, it is often useful to make a distinction between strong and weak endings, depending on the presence or absence of a determiner within the noun phrase. In Middle Dutch, the original difference between the strong and weak adjectival declension is greatly obscured, and adjectives in different texts may display varying endings in identical environments. Again it is important to stress

that we are not discussing one particular dialect spoken at one particular time. Especially the later medieval texts display instability of adjectival inflection.

The preceding facts indicate why a distinction between weak and strong adjectival declension is not feasible for Middle Dutch. Table 15 exemplifies the adjective endings from an historical linguistic point of view, using the adjective *goet* 'good':

Table 15. adjective endings

	singular masculine	singular feminine	singular neuter	plural all genders
N	<i>goede, goet</i>	<i>goede</i>	<i>goede, goet</i>	<i>goede</i>
A	<i>goeden</i>	<i>goede</i>	<i>goede, goet</i>	<i>goede</i>
D	<i>goeden</i>	<i>goeder</i>	<i>goeden</i>	<i>goeden</i>
G	<i>goets, goedes</i>	<i>goeder</i>	<i>goets, goedes</i>	<i>goeder</i>

Special features of the above case and number categories include the following:

1. Nominative masculine/neuter singular; accusative neuter singular: The adjective ending *e* does not appear if there is no determiner, or if *een* or (*ne*)*gheen* introduce the noun phrase, e.g. *een schoon geluit* 'a beautiful sound'.
2. Dative masculine/neuter singular; accusative masculine singular: final *n* or the complete adjective ending *en* may be absent if the adjective and the noun are considered one semantic unit, e.g. *bi den heilige geest* 'with the Holy Ghost'.
3. Genitive masculine/neuter singular: If the adjective ends in a sibilant, the inflectional ending does not appear on the surface, e.g. *eens wijs conincs* (< *wijs + es*) 'of a wise king'.

Sometimes, the ending *en* occurs instead of (*e*)*s*, e.g. *des goeden mans* 'of the good man'.

4. Dative/genitive feminine singular:

- (a) variants are *ere*, *re*. They are often found after *l*, *n*, *r*, e.g. *met schoonre loser tael* 'in beautiful, sly language'.
- (b) In younger manuscripts, the endings *en* or *e* frequently occur, e.g. *der edelen vrouwen* 'of the noble woman'.
- (c) Words in weakly stressed *er* may drop the adjective ending *er* altogether, e.g. *in donker nacht* (< *donker + er*) 'in the dark night'.
- (d) Epenthetic *d* may appear after *l*, *r*, or *n*, e.g. *van der scoonder smale* (< *scoon + er*) 'from the beautiful, fair woman'.

5. Nominative/accusative plural: The ending *e* may be apocopated, e.g. *claer ogen* 'clear eyes'.

6. Genitive plural: *ere, re* are variants (cf. dative/genitive feminine singular).

In Middle Dutch, just like in English, adjectives can stand in attributive or predicate position. When used as a predicate adjective, it remains uninflected, e.g.

(37) *Sal uwe ziele reine sijn* (10:1)
 shall your soul pure be
 'If your soul shall be pure'

(38) *Hi was sot.* (14:30)
 he was foolish
 'He was foolish.'

(39) *Tconfoort is cleyne.* (11:18)
 the.relief is small
 'The relief is small.'

Attributive adjectives can occur before or after the noun they modify. Generally speaking, attributive adjectives have no ending if they immediately follow the noun, e.g. *den halsberch groet* (14:7) 'the large cuirass', *desen berch lanc* (8:6) 'this high mountain', *sine vloghele wide* (22:18) 'his wide wings'. However, if an article accompanies the adjective in postposition, the adjective is declined. In that case, the article and the adjective function as an apposition to the noun, e.g. *van Calistomus den vromen* (15:15) 'from Calistomus, the pious one'. Attributive adjectives which precede the noun they modify are declined. Below are some examples of such noun phrases:

(i) without any determiner: *grote vruechde* (19:57) 'great joy', *nieuwe cousen* (13:16) 'new stockings', *van roden goude* (13:20) 'of red gold'.

(ii) with an indefinite article: *met eere vremder nieuwer spise* (8:12) 'with a strange new food' *een witte bronie* (14:5) 'a white breastplate', *een schoon geluit* (19:1) 'a beautiful sound'.

(iii) with a definite article: *die reine maget* (19:31) 'the pure virgin', *dat meechedelike hert* (19:42) 'the virginal heart', *metten yersten slaghe* (22:22) 'with the first blow'.

(iv) with a possessive adjective: *zijn hoghe mogentheyte* (19:12) 'his high authority', *haer reine borsten* (19:43) 'the virginal breasts'.

(v) with a demonstrative adjective: *van desen hoghen prosent* (6:8, dat. sg.) 'by this high present', *in dezen nyewen iare* (19:62, dat. sg.) 'in this new year'.

When two adjectives modify one noun, one adjective may precede and the second one may follow that noun, e.g. *een coene helt stout* 'a brave and daring hero'.

7.3. Adjectives used as nouns

In Middle Dutch, adjectives can be used as nouns. In that case, they are usually inflected and take the adjective endings listed above, e.g. *die heyleghe* 'the saints', *die dode* 'the dead (pl.)', *de vroede* 'the wise (pl.)'. Occasionally adjectival nouns can also follow the declension of strong nouns, e.g. nom. *dat quaet* 'the evil', acc. sg. *den dode* 'the dead person'.

7.4. *al* 'each, every, all'

al 'each, every, all' can modify a noun or can be used as a pronoun.

(i) *al* followed by a noun:

If there is no determiner between *al* and the noun, *al* is declined like an adjective and is the equivalent of English 'all, each, every'. Note that *al* may accompany a noun in the singular or in the plural, e.g. *alle ongheordende liefde* 'all improper love', *van allen rouwe* 'of all mourning', *alle dinck* 'all things', *uut alre noet* 'out of all distress'.

When *al* occurs with a place name, it is best translated as 'all of ...', e.g. *in al Parijs* 'in all of Paris'.

When preceding a determiner and a noun, *al* or *alle* usually occur in all cases of the singular and plural (except in the dative plural), e.g. *boven alle uwe ghebueren* 'above all your neighbors', *al die werelt* 'the entire world', *al dat wilt* 'all undomesticated animals'. In the dative plural, *allen* is used, e.g. *van allen minen mesdaden* 'of all my offences'.

(ii) *al* used as a pronoun:

When used as a pronoun, *al* is best translated as 'everything, everyone, all'.

Table 16 shows the declension pattern of *al* used as a pronoun:

Table 16. *al* 'everything, everyone, all'

	singular	plural
N	<i>al, alle</i>	<i>alle, allen</i>
A	<i>al, alle</i>	<i>alle, allen</i>
D	<i>allen</i>	<i>allen, alle</i>
G	<i>alles, als</i>	<i>alre</i>

In the following examples, *al* is used as a pronoun:

- (40) *Hi hadde al dat hi hebben*
 he had everything which he have
woude. (13:27)
 desired
 'He had everything (that) he desired.'

- (41) *Alle die sijn ende nv leuen. (3:25)*
 all who are and now live
 'All those who (now) exist.'

Chapter 8

Vanden Vos Reynaerde [Reynard the Fox] (I)

8.1. Reading and textual analysis: *Vanden Vos Reynaerde* [Reynard the Fox]

The most famous work of Middle Dutch literature is without any doubt the beast epic *Vanden Vos Reynaerde* [Reynard the Fox], whose plot is set in the feudal world of animals. On Whitsunday, all animals, with the exception of Reynard, are gathering at the court of King Noble, the lion. Since Reynard has wronged so many of those present, all agree that he should be brought to the court for trial. Bruin, the bear, sets out to fetch the fox. After an unsuccessful expedition, Tibert, the tomcat, is sent for Reynard. He does not fare any better than his predecessor. Grimbert, the badger, finally manages to bring Reynard to the court, and the fox is sentenced to death by hanging. While the gallows are being prepared, Reynard regains freedom by relating a long and fabricated story about a conspiracy against the king and a hidden treasure.

Vanden Vos Reynaerde is a splendid satire of medieval society in which virtually nobody is spared, with everybody becoming the object of merciless ridicule. The accused stands out by virtue of his slyness and wickedness; the accusers are gullible and greedy.

The first part of the epic is based on *Li Plaid* [The Court Session], one of the French versions of the *Roman de Renard*. However, the clumsy ending of the French narrative has been completely replaced in the Middle Dutch version. In all probability, *Vanden Vos Reynaerde* was written during the second half of the thirteenth century. Its authorship has been the subject of a considerable amount of scholarly debate. Some suggested it was the work of several poets, while others supported the position that it was written by one single author, whose name (Willem) appears in the poem.

In the following excerpt, Bruin, the bear, has set out to meet Reynard in order to take him to King Noble's court. Reynard, however, does not intend to accompany the bear and uses all his inventiveness in pursuing his goal.

1 *Doe sprac reinaert ouer lanc*
 Huwes goets raets hebbet danc
 Heere bruun wel soete vrient
 Hi heuet u qualic ghedient

- 5 *Die hu beriet desen ganc*
Ende hu desen berch lanc
Ouer te loepene dede bestaen
Jc soude te houe sijn ghegaen
Al haddet ghi mi niet gheraden
 10 *Maer mi es den buuc so gheladen*
Ende in so vtermaten wijse
Met eere vremder nieuwer spise
Jc vruchte in sal niet moghen gaen
Jnne mach sitten no ghestaen
 15 *Jc bem so utermaten zat*
Reynaert wat haetstu wat
Heere brune ic hat crancke haue
Arem man dan nes gheen graue
Dat mooghdi bi mi wel weten
 20 *Wi aerme liede wi moeten heten*
Hadden wijs raet dat wi node haten
Goeder versscher honich raten
Hebbic couuer arde groet
Die moetic heten dor den noet
 25 *Als ic hel niet mach ghewinnen*
Nochtan als icse hebbe binnen
Hebbicker af pine ende onghemac
- 1 *sprac:* ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *spreken* 'to speak'
 2 *huwes:* poss. pron. (usually spelled *uwes*) 'your'
raets: gen. m. sg. of *raet* 'advice'
danc: acc. m. sg. of *danc* 'thanks'
 3 *bruun:* proper name 'Bruin'
wel: adv. 'very'
soete: adj. *soet*, *soete* 'sweet'
 4 *hevet ... ghedient:* 'has served'
u: pers. pron. 'you'
qualic: adv. 'wrongly, badly'
 5 *die:* indef. rel. pron. 'who'
hu: pers. pron. (usually spelled *u*) '(to) you'
beriet: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *beraden* 'to advise, recommend'
ganc: acc. m. sg. of *ganc* 'passage'
 6 *berch:* acc. m. sg. of *berch* 'mountain'
lanc: adj. *lanc* 'long, high'
 7 *dede bestaen:* 'made (you) take'
ouer te lopene: 'to cross'
 8 *Jc = ic*
soude ... sijn ghegaen: 'would have gone'

- 9 *houe*: dat. nt./m. sg. of *hof* 'court'
haddet ... gheraden: 'would ... have advised it'
mi: pers. pron. '(to) me'
 10 *maer*: conj. 'but'
es ... gheladen: 'is filled'
buuc: acc. m. sg. of *buuc* 'belly, stomach' (*den buuc* is the logical subject of this sentence.)
 11 *viermaten*: adj. *viermaten* (usually spelled *utermaten*) 'excessive'
wijse: acc./dat. f. sg. of *wijse* 'way, manner'
 12 *vremder*: adj. *vremt* 'strange'
niewer: adj. *niewe*, *nie* 'new'
spise: dat. f. sg. of *spise* 'food, fare'
 13 *vruchte*: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *vruchten* 'to fear'
in: *ic* + *en*; *ic*: pers. pron. 'I'; *en*: adv. of neg.
sal ... moghen gaen: 'shall ... be able to go'
 14 *jnne* = *ic* + *ne*
mach: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *moghen* 'to be able, may'
sitten: inf. 'to sit'
no: conj. 'nor'
ghestaen: inf. 'to stand'
 15 *bem*: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *sijn* 'to be'
zat: adj. *zat* 'satiated'
 16 *wat*: interrog. pron. 'what'
haetstu: *haets* + *tu*; *haets*: ind. 2nd sg. pret. of *heten* (usually spelled *eten*) 'to eat'; *tu*: cl. pron. 'you'
 17 *hat*: ind. 1st. sg. pret. of *heten* 'to eat'
crancke: adj. *cranck* 'poor, bad'
haue: acc. f. sg. of *haue* 'substance, stuff'
 18 *arem*: adj. *arem* (also spelled *arm*, *aerm*) 'poor'
dan nes = *dat* + *en* + *es*
graue: nom. m. sg. 'count'
 19 *mooghd*: *mooghd* + *i*; *mooghd*: ind. 2nd pl. of *moghen* 'to be able, may'; *i*: cl. pron. 'you'
weten: inf. 'to know'
 20 *aerme*: adj. *aerm* 'poor'
liede: nom. m. pl. (never sg.) 'people'
moeten: ind. 1st pl. pres. of *moeten* 'to have to, must'
heten: inf. 'to eat'
 21 *hadden wijs raet*: 'if we had the means for it'
dat: indef. rel. pron. 'what'
node: adv. 'reluctantly, unwillingly'
haten: subj. II, 1st pl. pret. of *heten* 'to eat'
 22 *goeder*: adj. *goet* 'good'
versscher: adj. *verssch*, *verssche* 'fresh'

- 23 *honich raten*: gen. f. pl. of *honich rate*, *honich raet* 'honeycomb'
hebbic: *hebbe* + *ic*; *hebbe*: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *hebben* 'to have';
ic: cl. pers. pron. 'I'
couuer: acc. nt./m. sg. of *couuer* 'stock, supply'
arde: adv. (usually spelled *harde*) 'very'
groet: adj. *groet* 'large'
- 24 *moetic*: *moet* + *ic*; *moet*: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *moeten* 'to have to, must'; *ic*: cl. pers. pron. 'I'
noet: acc. m. sg. of *noet* 'need, necessity'
- 25 *als*: conj. 'when'
hel niet: (usually spelled *el niet*) 'anything else'
- 26 *ghewinnen*: inf. 'to obtain, acquire'
- 27 *nochtan als icse hebbe binnen*: 'nevertheless, when I have eaten them'
- 27 *pine*: acc. f./m. sg. of *pine* 'pain'
onghemac: acc. nt. sg. of *onghemac* 'discomfort'

8.2. Compound sentences

Coordinating conjunctions are used to join clauses of equal rank. In Middle Dutch they are typically placed before the coordinating element. The major coordinating conjunctions are: *ende* 'and, but', *noch*, *no* 'nor', *nochtan* 'nevertheless, yet', *of(te)* 'or', *maer*, *newaer* 'but, yet', *doch* 'although', *ooc* 'also', *sonder* 'except', *dan* 'than', *nu ... nu*, *nu ... dan* 'now ..., then ...', *beide* 'both', *anter ... of(te)*, *antwerder ... of(te)* 'either ... or', *want* 'because', *bedi* 'because', e.g.

- (42) *Die esel liet daer siin eten staen*
the donkey left there its food standing
Ende viel in knieghede saen (3:5-6)
and fell on prayer.on.knees immediately
'The donkey left its food behind there and immediately fell down on its knees in prayer.'
- (43) *Dat en seldi haer vertrecken niet,*
that neg. part. shall.you to.her tell not
Want u mochte daer of verdriet
because you (D) might of.this regret
Comen hier namaels (6:15-17)
come later.on
'You shall not tell that to her, because you might regret this later on.'

- (44) *Jc soude te houe sijn ghegaen ...*
 I would to court have gone
Maer mi es den buuc so gheladen.
 but me (D) is the stomach so filled
 (8:8-10)
 'I would have gone to the court but my stomach is so filled.'

When two clauses with common constituents are conjoined, it is possible to delete the shared constituent of the second clause. In English such deletion is acceptable only if the form and the grammatical function of the deleted part is identical in both clauses. In Middle Dutch omitted elements do not always share the same syntactic function in both clauses. In (45), taken from the reading excerpt of Chapter 6, the logical subject of the finite verb *worde* is *Damiet* or *sie* 'she'. The context indicates that *Venus* can not possibly be the deleted subject of the clause:

- (45) *Seidi hare sijn hoghe gheslachte,*
 told.you her his high lineage
Ende dan Venus in haer wrachte,
 and then Venus in her worked
Ende worde minnende den jongen man
 and became loving the young man
 (6:19-21)
 'If you told her about his noble lineage, and Venus worked in her, and [she = the daughter] fell in love with the young man.'

Note that medieval scribes made inconsistent usage of punctuation. In some manuscripts periods and commas are barely used. As a result, it is often difficult to determine where phrase and sentence boundaries are located.

8.3. Personal pronouns: first and second person

The excerpt from *Vanden Vos Reynaerde* at the beginning of this chapter is a dialogue in direct speech, thus exemplifying the personal pronouns in the first and second persons. Table 17 provides a schematic representation of these pronouns:

Table 17. Personal pronouns: first and second person

	singular first person	singular second person	plural first person	plural second person
N	<i>ic, icke</i>	<i>du</i>	<i>wi</i>	<i>ghi</i>
A	<i>mi</i>	<i>di</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>u, ju</i>
D	<i>mi</i>	<i>di</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>u, ju</i>
G	<i>mijns</i>	<i>dijns</i>	<i>ons</i>	<i>uwes</i>

During the Middle Dutch period, the usage of the second person pronouns changed substantially, probably influenced by French. While the pronoun *du* was originally employed to address one single person, it was almost completely replaced by the plural pronoun *ghi*, which was considered a politer form of address towards the end of the Middle Ages. As a result, *ghi* could be used for one or for several addressees. In medieval texts, it is not uncommon to find both *du* and *ghi* applied indiscriminately for one addressee within one and the same text.

Note the following variations for the personal pronouns:

1. Nominative singular:
 - (a) In Limburgic, *ich* occurs as a variant of *ic*.
 - (b) Total assimilation of the velar consonant may occur when the negative *ne, en* immediately follows *ic*: *in* (< *ic* + *en*), *inne* (< *ic* + *ne*).
 - (c) When *ic* is used as a clitic pronoun, the person/number ending *e* of the preceding finite verb is apocopated, e.g. *levic* (< *leve* + *ic*) 'I am living', *groetic* (< *groete* + *ic*) 'I am greeting'.
2. Accusative/dative singular: *mie* and *die* are variants of *mi* and *di*.
3. Nominative singular: The clitic equivalent for *du* appears as *tu*, e.g. *haetsu* (< *haets* + *du*) 'you ate', *leefsdu* (< *leefs* + *du*) 'you are living', *dattu* (< *dat* + *du*) 'that + you', *alstu* (*alse* + *du*) 'when, if + you'.
4. Accusative/dative plural: *uus* sometimes occurs in the dialects of Holland and Flanders.
5. The clitic equivalent of *ghi* is *i*, e.g. *mooghdi* 'you may', *seghdi* 'you say', *hoerdi* 'you hear', *spreecti* 'you are speaking', *laeti* 'you let' (with devoicing of *d* in *spreecti* and *laeti*).
6. The plural pronouns may be intensified by the suffix *liede(n)* 'people', e.g. *met onslieden* 'with us', *ghiliede* 'you'.

The following examples illustrate the use of the clitic pronouns in the first and second person:

- (46) *Waer sidi?* (6:2)
 where are.you
 'Where are you?'
- (47) *Dat en seldi haer vertrecken niet.* (6:15)
 that neg. part. shall.you to.her tell not
 'You shall not tell that to her.'
- (48) *Wat haetstu?* (8:16)
 what ate.you
 'What did you eat?'
- (49) *Die moetic heten.* (8:24)
 that must.I eat
 'That I must eat.'

8.4. Possessive adjectives and pronouns: first and second person

The stem of the possessive adjectives and pronouns for the first and second person is identical to the stem of the personal pronoun in the genitive case, i.e. *mijn, dijn, onse, uwe*. Possessive adjectives may either precede or follow the noun they accompany. When positioned after the noun, they remain unchanged, e.g. *dat herte mijn* (acc. sg.) 'my heart'. If they precede the noun, they take the same endings as the adjective, e.g. *mijn moeder* (nom. sg.) 'my mother', *uwer dochter* (dat. sg.) 'your daughter'.

Instead of historically motivated *mijn* and *dijn*, *mijne* and *dijne* are also attested. These forms are analogous to *onse* and *uwe*. *ons* and *u*, without the historically motivated final *e*, are analogous formations to *mijn* and *dijn*. Also, when the ending *er* follows *mijn* and *dijn*, epenthetic *d* may appear, i.e. *mijnder*, *sijnder* or total assimilation of *n* can occur, as in *miere* (*diere* seldom occurs).

8.5. *elc* 'each, everyone, all'

elc can occur in the singular 'each, everyone' or in the plural 'all'. It may take adjective endings or may remain undeclined. Sporadically, *eelc* and *elic* are found. Examples are in the following noun phrase: *van elcs hemels rike* (22:41) 'from each Kingdom of Heaven', and in (50) and (51):

68 Chapter 8

(50) *Daer elc siin vee wacht.* (3:8)
where everyone his cattle herds
'Where everyone herds their cattle'

(51) *Soe grote clærheit elc om hem sach.* (3:11)
such large glare each.one about him saw
'Such a glare each one saw about him.'

Chapter 9

Van Sente Brandane [Saint Brendan]

9.1. Reading and textual analysis: *Van Sente Brandane* [Saint Brendan]

An episode in the life of the Irish monk, Brendan, is recorded in *Van Sente Brandane* [Saint Brendan]. One day, Brendan found a description of the wonders of creation in an old book. Unable to believe what he read, Brendan burned the book and cursed its author. Immediately an angel appeared and ordered the monk to sail away and undertake a nine-year-long voyage around the world. In this way, the monk might be convinced of the truth of the wonders of creation as described in the book. Brendan set out with more than eighty men aboard his ship: *Van Sente Brandane* is an account of the fantastic and often fairy-tale like adventures of the travelers. For example, having sailed for a while, the men found a small island full of trees. As they walked onto the island, its "bottom" suddenly disappeared from under their feet. Later it turned out that this "island" was the back of a whale.

Van Sente Brandane is reminiscent of the tradition of *Immrama* 'stories of voyages', a Celtic genre that probably originated in the seventh century. One of these *Immramas*, the Irish *Immram Maeldúin* [The Voyage of Maeldúin], was the basis for the popular Latin prose narrative *Navigatio Sancti Brendani* [The Voyage of Saint Brendan]. In the Latin version, which was written during the tenth century, many of the heathen magic elements were Christianized. In all probability, this Latin work served as one of the sources for the first composition of the Brendan legend in a Germanic language. Although the earliest Germanic text is no longer extant, it must have been written around 1150 in the Mid-Rhenish area. That (lost) copy served as a basis for the Dutch and the High and Low German versions of the legend.

Two versions of the Middle Dutch *Van Sente Brandane* exist, of which only one is complete. The original composition of the Middle Dutch narrative may probably be dated in the twelfth century and was written in an eastern dialect.

The following excerpt, taken from the famous *Comburgse Manuscript* [Manuscript of Comburg], relates the monks' visit to a marvelous but mysterious castle, where a monk cannot resist the temptation of stealing a precious bridle:

- 1 *Den moonken quam in haren zin,*
 Datsi alle gaen daer in,
 Om te siene die scone zale;
 Een der moonken stal daer tien male
 5 *Eenen breydel wel ghedaen;*
 Dat sal hi becoopen saen
 Wel zeere sonder twifel;
 Daer stont bi een duvel,
 Diet hem riet met liste.
 10 *Ic wane hijs niet en wiste,*
 Waer omme dat hine hem boot.
 Dies leet hi pijn groot.
 Hi riet hem, dat hine name,
 Want hi hem wel ware betame,
 15 *Met te rijdene in zinen lande;*
 Dies leet hi groote scande.
 Hi roerdene dat hi waghede;
 Hoe wel dien moonc behaghede,
 Dat hine claer sach scinen!
 20 *Dies waren sine pinen*
 Ter hellen vele groot,
 Want der duvele conroot
 Pijndene, doe hi daer quam,
 Om datti daer den breidel nam
 25 *In die zale metter hant*
 Ende baerchen onder zijn ghewant.
 Doe sijt besien hadden wale,
 Te hant ruunden si die zale
 Ende ghinghen wech te zamen.
- 1 *moonken: dat. m. pl. of moonc 'monk'*
 haren: poss. pron. 'their'
 zin: acc. m. sg. of zin 'sense, thought'
 2 *gaen: ind. 3rd pl. pres. of gaen 'to go'*
 3 *om te siene: 'in order to see'*
 zale: acc. f. sg. of zale 'palace, dwelling'
 4 *stal: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of stelen 'to steal'*
 male: dat. m./nt. sg. of mael, male 'time'
 5 *breydel: acc. m. sg. of breydel 'bridle'*
 ghedaen: pp. of doen 'to make, do'
 6 *sal ... becoopen: 'will expiate, will atone for'*
 7 *zeere: adv. 'strongly, to a high degree'*
 twifel: acc. m. sg. of twifel 'doubt'
 8 *stont: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of staen, standen 'to stand'*

- 9 *duvel*: nom. m. sg. 'devil'
diet: *die* + *et*; *die*: rel. pron. 'who' (antecedent is *een duvel*); *et*:
 cl. pron. 'it'
hem: pers. pron. '(to) him'
riet: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *raden* 'to advise, recommend'
 10 *wane*: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *wanen* 'to hope, think'
hijs niet en wiste: 'he did not know (it)'
 11 *waer omme dat*: conj. 'why'
hine: *hi* + *ne*; *hi*: pers. pron. 'he'; *ne*: cl. pron. 'him, it'
boot: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *bieden* 'to offer, present'
 12 *leet*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *liden* 'to suffer, endure'
 13 *name*: subj. II, 3rd sg. of *nemen* 'to take'
 14 *ware*: subj. II, 3rd sg. of *wesen* 'to be'
betame: adj. *betame* 'suitable, becoming'
 15 *met te ridene*: 'to ride with it'
zinen: poss. pron. 'his'
lande: dat. nt. sg. of *lant* 'land, country'
 16 *scande*: acc. f. sg. of *scande* 'shame, disgrace'
 17 *roerdene*: *roerde* + *ne*; *roerde*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *roeren* 'to
 move, touch'; *ne*: cl. pron. 'him, it'
waghede: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *waghen* 'to move'
 18 *hoe*: adv. 'how'
behaghede: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *behaghen* 'to please, think fit'
 19 *scinen*: inf. 'to shine'
 20 *sine*: poss. pron. 'his'
 21 *vele*: adv. 'very'
 22 *conroot*: nom. nt./f. sg. 'crowd, followers'
 23 *pijndene*: *pijnde* + *ne*; *pijnde*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *pinen* 'to
 torture, torment'; *ne*: cl. pron. 'him'
 24 *om datti*: *om dat* + *i*; *om dat*: conj. 'because'; *i*: cl. pron. 'he'
 26 *baerchen*: *baerch* + *en*; *baerch*: (usually spelled *barch*) ind. 3rd sg.
 pret. of *berghen* 'to hide'; *en*: cl. pron. 'him, it'
onder: prep. 'under'
ghewant: acc. nt. sg. of *ghewant* 'clothing'
 27 *besien hadden*: 'had viewed'
 28 *te hant*: adv. 'quickly, immediately'
ruumden: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *rumen* 'to leave, empty'
 29 *ghinghen*: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *gaen* 'to go'
wech: adv. 'away'

9.2. Complex sentences I

Subordination functions as a device to expand the nuclear sentence. Complex sentences generally maintain the structure of simple declarative sentences, i.e. the finite verb of the main clause stands in second position. The finite verb of a dependent clause does not have a fixed position in Middle Dutch. It is sure, however, that it cannot immediately follow the subordinating conjunction. It may occur immediately after the subject, or, more commonly, closer to the end of the clause. A dependent clause may function as subject, as object, or as adverbial complement to the main clause.

Subordinating conjunctions are used to join a subordinate clause to the main clause. Below are examples of some commonly used subordinating conjunctions, classified according to the semantic field to which they belong:

(i) Expressing causal relationship: 'since, as, because', e.g. *bedi (dat), want (dat), omdat, om des, dore dat, mits (dat), aengesien dat, mettien dat*.

(ii) Expressing concessive relationship: 'in spite of, nevertheless, yet', e.g. *boven (dat), nochtan(ne) (dat), hoewel (dat), so niettegenstaende, niet wederstaende*.

(iii) Expressing conditional relationship: 'if, provided that, unless', e.g. *indien (dat), mits, te mits dat, behalven dat, maer dat, (h)ensi dat, (h)en ware dat, ten si, ten waer, ten ware*.

(iv) Expressing temporal relationship: 'when, as, since, until', e.g. *al doe, doe (dat), doen, also, wanneer (dat), sedert (dat), tote (dat)*.

Examples of complex sentences encountered in reading excerpts are:

- (52) *Bider wijsheit van Salomoene*
 by.means.of.the wisdom of Solomon
Ende bi haers selfs list groet
 and by.means.of. their.own skill great
Makeden sijt, dat emmer boet
 made they.it that.it always held
Sijn hant ter sonnen waert gherecht (2:15-19)
 its hand towards.the.sun reached
 'By means of Solomon's wisdom and through their own great skill,
 they made it in such a way, that it always reached its hand towards
 the sun.'

- (53) *Doe die helle was ghestoort,*
 when the hell was destroyed
Also ghi voren hebt ghehoort,
 as you before have heard
Keerde die ziele weder of
 returned the soul again sep. pref.
Ten lichame in dat graf. (5:13-16)
 to.the body in the grave
 'When hell was destroyed, as you heard before, the soul returned to the body in the grave.'
- (54) *Sij moesten den lichame laten staen*
 they had.to the body leave standing
Doen sijne vonden soe ghedaen. (4:11-12)
 when they.it found so done
 'They had to leave the body, when they found it in this way.'
- (55) *Dies waren sine pinen*
 this (G) were his sufferings
Ter hellen vele groot,
 at.the hell very large
Want der duvele conroot
 because the devils crowd
Pijndene, doe hi daer quam,
 tortured.him when he there came
Om datti daer den breidel nam. (9:20-24)
 because.he there the bridle took
 'For this his sufferings in hell were severe, as the crowd of devils tortured him when he arrived there, because he had taken the bridle there.'
- (56) *Hi roerdene dat hi waghede. (9:17)*
 he touched.it that it moved
 'He touched it so that it moved.'

The conjunction *dat* 'that' occurs frequently in Middle Dutch texts and deserves special attention:

(i) *dat* is often used to introduce a subject or an object clause. As such, it is best translated into English as 'that', e.g.

- (57) *Die esel vernam ende versach*
 the donkey saw and understood

Dat het was ene saleche dracht. (3:2-3)
 that it was a blessed child
 'The donkey saw and understood that it was a blessed child.'

- (58) *Soe merct de redene wel dat haer lief*
 soe notices the Reason well that her love
soe groot es. (20:1)
 so big is
 'Then Reason notices that her love is so big.'

- (59) *Hoe wel dien moonc behaghede*
 how well the monk pleased
Dat hine claer sach scinen! (9:18-19)
 that he.it brightly saw shining
 'It pleased the monk a lot that he saw it [the bridle] shine brightly.'

(ii) *dat* may indicate consecutive or final relationship: 'so that, in order that', e.g.

- (60) *Die knecht die heeft hem wech ghestolen*
 the servant expl. has refl. away slipped
Wijsliken, mit snelre list
 wisely with swift skill
Datter nyemant off en wist. (15:1-3)
 so.that.it nobody about neg. part. knew
 'The servant has wisely and skillfully slipped away, so that nobody knew about it.'

- (61) *Odolyas te hant daer quam,*
 Odolyas immediately there came
Listeliken, datmens niet en
 cleverly that.one.it (G) not neg. part.
vernam (15:16-17)
 noticed
 'Immediately, Odolyas came there in such a way, that nobody noticed it.'

- (62) *Si ontboot him dat hi quame.*
 she summoned him that he would.come
 (15:26)
 'She summoned him so that he would come.'

(iii) As the second element of a compound conjunction, *dat* may be combined with a preposition, a relative pronoun, or an adverb, e.g. *bi dat*, *omme dat*, *hoe dat*, *wanneer dat*. In this case, *dat* may or may not be translated, e.g.

- (63) *Elegast* *quam* *eerst* *int* *crijt*,
 Elegast came first into.the ring
Omme dat *hi* *aen legghe* *was*. (16:14-15)
 because he accuser was
 'Elegast was the first to enter the ring, since he was the accuser.'
- (64) *Hebt* *heden* *mijns* *raet*,
 have now mine protection
So dattic *niet* *en* *sterve*. (16:28-29)
 so.that.I not neg. part. die
 'Protect me now, so that I will not die.'

9.3. Personal pronouns: third person

The personal pronouns of the third person singular show a distinction in gender. The gender of the pronoun corresponds to the gender of the noun which it replaces. For example, *breydel* 'bridle' is masculine, therefore, the pronoun *hi* is used to refer to 'the bridle' in the nominative case. No distinction in gender is made in the plural.

9.3.1. In stressed position

There are two different stems for the personal pronoun of the third person: one with initial *h*, another one with initial *s*. Table 18 shows the forms of the third person pronouns:

Table 18. Personal pronouns: third person in stressed position

	singular masculine	singular feminine	singular neuter	plural all genders
N	<i>hi</i>	<i>si</i>	<i>het</i>	<i>si</i>
A	<i>hem</i>	<i>hare, haer</i>	<i>het</i>	<i>hem, hen</i>
D	<i>hem</i>	<i>hare, haer</i>	<i>hem</i>	<i>hem, hen</i>
G	<i>sijns</i>	<i>haer</i>	<i>sijns</i>	<i>haer</i>

Note the following variations for the personal pronouns in Table 18:

1. Nominative singular: Variants are: m. *hie* and *he*; f. *sie* or *soe*; nt. *hit*.
2. Dative masculine/neuter singular: *heme* is attested in older manuscripts.
3. Genitive neuter singular: *sijns* occurs only sporadically.
4. Nominative/accusative neuter singular: The personal pronoun *het* is often contracted with a following negative *en*, resulting in *hen*.
5. Nominative plural: *sie* also occurs.
6. Accusative plural: *si* or *sie* are occasionally attested. In more recent texts, one may find *haer*, or a compound with *liede(n)* as a second element, i.e. *haerliede(n)*.
7. Dative plural: *hem* is found in texts of western origin. Typical of the dialect of Brabant is the pronoun *hen*, while the East uses *hen*, *hun*, or *hon*.
8. Genitive plural: variants are *haerre*, *haers*, *haerer*, *haerder*.

9.3.2. In unstressed position

In unstressed position personal pronouns of the third person occur as clitics. Table 19 lists the possible clitic forms for the third person pronouns (Parentheses indicate that the vowel is frequently syncope):

Table 19. Personal pronouns: third person in unstressed position

	singular masculine	singular feminine	singular neuter	plural all genders
N	<i>i</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>(e)t</i>	<i>se</i>
A	<i>(e)ne, en</i>	<i>se</i>	<i>(e)t</i>	<i>se</i>
D	<i>em, en</i>	<i>(e)re, er</i>	<i>em, en</i>	<i>en</i>
G	<i>(e)s</i>	<i>(e)re, er</i>	<i>(e)re, er</i>	<i>(e)re, er</i>

The presence of a clitic pronoun may cause lengthening of the preceding stressed vowel, if the required environment is present, e.g. *si naemt* 'she took it', *al waest* 'even if it was'. For other phonological changes caused by clitic pronouns, see 1.11.

The examples illustrate the use of clitic pronouns in the third person. Note that it was possible to have a sequence of two (or more) clitic pronouns, as in (71) and (74):

- (65) *Daer ment best moge bescouwen* (2:10)
 where one.it best may see
 'Where one may best see it.'
- (66) *Makeden sijt, dat emmer boet*
 made they.it that.it always held
Sijn hant ter sonnen waert gerecht,
 its hand towards.the.sun reached
Al waest metten swerke bedect. (2:17-18)
 even.if was.it with.the dark.clouds covered
 'They made it in such a way, that it always reached its hand towards
 the sun, even if it was covered by dark clouds.'
- (67) *Daert in de crebbe geboren lach.* (3:1)
 as.it in the manger born lay
 'As it lay there, newborn in the manger.'
- (68) *Sij lietens gode gewalden.* (4:1)
 they let.it (G) God settle
 'They let God settle it.'
- (69) *Sy moesten den lichame laten staen*
 they had.to the body leave standing
Doen sijne vonden soe ghedaen. (4:11-12)
 when they.it found so done
 'They had to leave the body when they found it in this way.'
- (70) *Daer men met live ane zach.* (5:4)
 as one.him with life saw
 'As one saw him alive.'
- (71) *Ic salne ophouden voor mijn kint;*
 I shall.him raise as my child
Mine dochter salicken bevelen. (6:9-10)
 my daughter shall.I.him give.in.charge
 'I will raise him as my child, I will put him under the care of my
 daughter.'
- (72) *Dan daer zijt met eeren doen can* (7:10)
 except where she.it with honor do can
 'Except where she can do it with honor.'

- (73) *Dan wordise ghepresen een goede vrouwe.* (7:14)
 then is.she praised a good woman
 'Then she is praised as a good woman.'
- (74) *Hebbicker af pine ende onghemac.* (8:27)
 have.I.from.it pain and discomfort
 'I have pain and discomfort from it.'
- (75) *Waer omme dat hine hem boot.* (9:11)
 why he.it him offered
 'Why he offered it [the bridle] to him.'
- (76) *Om datti daer den breidel nam* (9:24)
 because.he there the bridle took
 'Because he had taken the bridle there'

9.4. The indefinite pronoun *men* 'one'

The indefinite pronoun *men* corresponds to English 'one'. *men* can only occur in the nominative case, e.g.

- (77) *Men gaf hem water.* (13:24)
 one gave him water
 'One gave him water.'
- (78) *Daer ment best moge bescouwen.* (2:10)
 where one.it best may see
 'Where one may best see it.'

In (79) *men* is a contraction of *men* and negative *en*:

- (79) *Men mach hen niet ghelooeven.* (10:11)
 one.neg. part. may them not believe
 'One must not believe them.'

9.5. Possessive adjectives and pronouns: third person

The stems of the possessive adjectives and pronouns of the third person are:
 masculine singular: *sijn*; feminine singular: *hare*; neuter singular: *sijn*;
 plural (all genders): *hare*;

Examples of possessive adjectives are: *in sire ghewelt* (dat. f. sg.) 'in his power', *siin eten* (acc. nt. sg.) 'his food', *met haren speren* (dat. pl.) 'with their spears', *haer kindekijn* (acc. nt. sg.) 'her little child', *haer eere* (acc. f. sg.) 'her honor'.

Note the following variants:

1. In Flemish dialects, *sijn* may occur in the feminine singular and in the plural.
2. The undeclined form *sine*, with final *e*, is sometimes used, e.g. *sine hoeft* 'his head'.
3. When the ending *er* follows *sijn*, epenthetic *d* may appear, e.g. *sijnder*.
4. In *siere* (< *sijn* + *ere*), total assimilation of *n* occurs.

9.6. Reflexive pronouns

The forms of the reflexive pronoun coincide with those of the personal pronoun in stressed position, except in the neuter singular. Table 20 shows the reflexive pronouns:

Table 20. Reflexive pronouns

	singular	plural
first person	<i>mi</i>	<i>ons</i>
second person	<i>di</i>	<i>u, ju</i>
third person		
masculine	<i>hem</i>	<i>hen, hem</i>
feminine	<i>hare, haer</i>	<i>hen, hem</i>
neuter	<i>hem</i>	<i>hen, hem</i>

Examples are:

- (80) *Maer doe Cristus was verresen*
 but when Christ was risen
Ende hem vertoende dien (5:1-2)
 and refl. showed to.this.person
 'But when Christ was risen and appeared to this person.'

- (81) *Hie cleeedde hem ende es upghestaen.* (13:18)
 he dressed refl. and has.got.up
 'He dressed himself and got up.'

Under High German influence, the reflexive pronouns of the third person singular and plural gradually changed to *sich*, which appeared first in the East during the fourteenth century. *sich* could be used for all three genders. An early attestation of *sich* occurs in the excerpt of Hendrik van Veldeke's *Sint Servaes Legende*:

- (82) *Sij vreydsen sich sonder mate.* (4:15)
 they were.afraid refl. without limit
 'They were extremely afraid.'

Reflexive pronouns may also be followed by *selve(n)* 'self', e.g.

- (83) *Ende dan mindi uwen evenkersten alse*
 and then love.you your fellow-man as
u-selven. (10:7)
 yourself
 'And then you will love your fellow-man as yourself.'

9.7. The genitive case

Older Germanic languages used the genitive case more frequently than their modern counterparts do. As a result, the occurrence of the genitive in Middle Dutch texts may at times confuse the reader. Below are some guidelines for correct interpretation of the genitive case in Middle Dutch texts.

The genitive is used to denote possession or attribution. Such descriptive genitives could either precede or follow the noun phrase they modified. However, they occurred more frequently in front of the noun phrase being described, e.g. *in des zeewes gronde* 'at the bottom of the sea', *coninc der coningen* 'King of Kings', *der heren heer* 'Lord of Lords'.

Some verbs take a genitive object. This group of verbs is definable by means of semantic criteria which denote human activity. In the textual analysis which accompanies each reading excerpt in this book, verbs which govern the genitive are marked (+ gen.). The following verbs frequently take a genitive object:

- (i) Verbs which indicate sensory perception, e.g. *horen* 'to hear', *vernemen* 'to observe', *sien* 'to see', *goeem, ware nemen* 'to observe, pay attention to'.

- (ii) Verbs which require an intellectual activity, e.g. *waenen* 'to think, expect', *vermanen* 'to remind, urge', *ontbeiden* 'to wait for', *weten* 'to know', *raet hebben* 'to advise, help someone'.
- (iii) Verbs related to the expression of an emotion, esp. "to enjoy, thank, be afraid", e.g. *ghebruken* 'to enjoy', *misbruken* 'to abuse', *ghesmaken* 'to taste, like', *ghevoelen* 'to feel', *vreuchden* (refl.) 'to rejoice', *willen* 'to want', *schamen* (refl.) 'to be ashamed'.
- (iv) Verbs which indicate lack or need of something, e.g. *behoeven* 'to need, require', *gheren* 'to desire', *lusten* 'to desire', *ontberen* 'to lack, be in want of'.
- (v) Verbs which indicate striving toward a specific goal, e.g. *vraghen* 'to ask for', *onderwinden* 'to attempt', *beginnen* 'to begin', *pleghen* 'to practice, take care of'.
- (vi) Verbs in the semantic field of (dis)avowal, confession, e.g. *vertyen* 'to deny', *lachter spreken* 'to cry shame upon', *lien* 'to confess, profess', *gien* 'to confess, avow', and in the expression *sijs selfs vertiën* 'to deny oneself'.
- (vii) The genitive may be used in a partitive sense with verbs indicating "to eat" or "to drink", e.g. *eten* 'to eat', *drinken* 'to drink', *nutten* 'to partake of a meal', *ghewinnen* 'to obtain, acquire', *ghecrighen* 'to obtain, acquire', *ombiten* 'to have a light meal'.

Examples of sentences with finite verbs accompanied by a genitive object are:

- (84) *Nemt uws-selfs ware.* (10:23)
 take yourself (G) guard
 'Pay attention to yourself.'
- (85) *Ende nemt Sijs gooem.* (10:27)
 and take him (G) attention
 'And pay attention to Him.'
- (86) *Datmens niet en vernam* (15:17)
 that.one.it (G) not neg. part. noticed
 'That nobody noticed it'
- (87) *In liets mi niet ghecusten.* (21:12)
 I.neg. part. let.it (G) me not please
 'I would not be pleased with it.'

- (88) *Des sy en meynde cleyn noch groot.*
 this (G) she neg. part. intended not at all
 (15:23)
 'She did not intend this at all.'
- (89) *Ik wane hijs niet en wiste.* (9:10)
 I think he.it (G) not neg. part. knew
 'I think he did not know it.'
- (90) *Dat ic uwes soude vergheten* (21:15)
 that I you (G) would forget
 'That I would forget you'
- (91) *Huwes goets raets hebbet danc.* (8:2)
 your good advice (G) have thanks
 'Thank you for your good advice.'
- (92) *Den stegereep wistijs cleinen danc.* (14:22)
 the stirrup knew.he.it (G) little thanks
 'He had little (no) need for the stirrup.'
- (93) *Pleeght ghieragher minnen,*
 practice desirous love (G)
Ende alre dooght. (10:29-30)
 and all virtue (G)
 'Practice desirous love and be virtuous.'
- (94) *Ik daden liën der ondaet.*
 I made.him confess the offence (G)
 'I made him confess the offence.'
- (95) *Ick en hebs niet el.* (11:17)
 I neg. part. have.it (G) nothing else
 'I do not have anything else.'

The genitive case is governed by certain adjectives. Frequently, these adjectives are a derivation or a paraphrase of a verb which governs the genitive, e.g. *seker* (*wesen*) '(to be) sure of', *sculdich* (*wesen*) '(to be) guilty of', *ghewone* (*wesen*) '(to be) accustomed, used to', e.g.

- (96) *Ende ic des wel seker ware.* (21:9)
 and I this (G) well sure would.be
 'And I would be sure of this'

The genitive is sometimes used adverbially, e.g. in expressions of time: *eens sdaeche* 'one day', *winters ende somers* 'during the winter and the summer'.

Chapter 10

Jan van Ruusbroec (I)

10.1. Reading and textual analysis: Jan van Ruusbroec

Jan van Ruusbroec's name belongs among the best known European mystics. Born in 1293 in Ruusbroec near Brussels, he was ordained a priest in the year 1317. He became a collegiate chaplain at *Sint Goedele* (Saint Gudula), where he remained until 1343. At that time, Ruusbroec and two friends retreated to Groenendael, where they wanted to devote their entire life to the service of God. Together, they founded the Abbey of Groenendael, and Ruusbroec became its first prior. He spent the next thirty-eight years of his life at the Abbey in worship and contemplation, performing humble and practical services. He died in Groenendael on December 2, 1381, at the age of 88. Approximately forty years after Ruusbroec's death, Hendrik Pomerius (circa 1382-1469), a canon at Groenendael, wrote a biography of the Abbey's famous prior.

Ruusbroec's works are of a moralistic-didactic nature. He advocates a life style dictated by religious devotion, based on his views concerning mystic experiences and the importance of prayer, fasting, and industry. The author also reminds his readers of their moral and social obligations and does not refrain from criticizing those church functionaries who abuse their power.

With Jan van Ruusbroec, fourteenth-century prose reaches its climax. His fame extended beyond the Dutch linguistic borders, with the German mystics Tauler and Suso among his admirers. In the middle of the sixteenth century, a Latin translation of Ruusbroec's works by Lawrence Surius made his writings accessible to all of Europe.

Among Ruusbroec's numerous works, the following two are the best known: *De Gheestelike Brulocht* [The Spiritual Betrothal], and *Het Rijkje der Ghelieven* [The Kingdom of Lovers]. The excerpt selected for this chapter is taken from *Van .vii. Trappen in den Graed der Gheesteleker Minnen* [The Seven Rungs on the Ladder of Spiritual Love]. In this treatise, Ruusbroec claims that the first and foremost task of any human being is to praise and honor God. The author describes seven stages of devotion, which should be rigorously observed and practiced, if one is to achieve a state of bliss and oneness with God. This passage introduces the third rung of the ladder: achieving purity of the soul.

1 Sal uwe z i e l e reine sijn, soe moetdi, overmids de liefde Gods,
 haten ende versmaden alle ongheordende liefde ende neighinghe tote
 u-selven, tote vader ende moeder, ende tote allen creatueren, alsoe dat
 5 ghi u-selven mindt, ende alle creatueren, toe den dienste Gods, ende
 anders niet; soe mooghdì dat waerd spreken dat Cristus sprac: "Die
 den wille Gods leeft, dats mijn moeder, mijn suster, ende mijn
 brueder". Ende dan mindi uwen evenkersten alse u-selven. **
 Houdt u reine; en laetd u niemene trecken noch vaen, met waerden
 10 noch met werken, met ghiften noch met mieden, met ufeninghen
 noch met heileghen schine. Al schinet gheest, het wert al vleesch:
 men mach hen niet ghelooeven. * En ufent//niemene, ende en wilt
 oec van niemene gheufent sijn.

*Al schinet goed,
 Het wert onspoed,
 15 Ende al venijn.
 Staet op uwe hoede,
 Doet alse die vroede:
 En laetd u niet bedrieghen.
 Werddi ghetoghen,
 20 Ghi sijt bedroghen:
 Men sal u lieghen.
 Laetd al dit varen:
 Nemt uws-selfs ware,
 Ende ufent Jhesum uwen Brudegooem.
 25 Scuwet vremde gaste,
 Blijft met Hem vaste,
 Ende nemt Sijns gooem.
 Keert u binnen,
 Pleeght ghiereghe minnen,
 30 Ende alre dooght.
 Hi sal u spisen,
 Leeren ende wisen,
 Want Hi es uwe Vooght.
 Hi sal u vuren,
 35 Boven alle uwe ghebueren,
 In sijns Vaders scoet.
 Daer vendi trouwe,
 Boete van allen rouwe,
 Ende van alre noeed.*

1 sal uwe z i e l e ... sijn: 'If your soul shall be ...'
 reine: adj. reine 'pure, clean'
 soe: adv. 'then'

- moetdi*: *moetd* + *i*; *moetd* (< *moeted*): ind. 2nd pl. of *moeten* 'to have to'; *i*: cl. pron. 'you'
overmids: prep. 'through, by means of'
liefde: acc. f. sg. of *liefde* 'love, affection'
2 *haten*: inf. 'to hate'
versmiden: inf. 'to scorn, despise'
ongheordende: adj. *ongheordent* 'improper, sinful'
neighinghe: acc. f. sg. of *neighinghe* 'attachment, inclination'
3 *tote*: prep. 'towards'
alsoe dat: conj. 'so that'
4 *mindt*: ind. 2nd. pl. pres. of *minnen* 'to love, like'
toe: prep. 'for the sake of, because of'
dienste: dat. m. sg. of *dienste*, *dienst* 'service'
5 *anders*: adv. 'otherwise'
niet: pron. 'nothing'
mooghdi: *mooghd* + *i*; *mooghd*: ind. 2nd pl. pres. of *moghen* 'to be able to'; *i*: 'you'
waerd: acc. nt. sg. of *waerd* (usually spelled *wort*, *woort*) 'word'
spreken: inf. 'to speak'
dat: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *dat waerd*)
die: indef. rel. pron. 'whoever'
6 *wille*: acc. m. sg. of *wille* 'will, wish'
leeft: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *leven* 'to observe, comply with'
7 *mindt*: *mind* + *i*; *mind*: ind. 2nd pl. pres. of *minnen* 'to love, like'; *i*: 'you'
evenkersten: acc. m. sg. of *evenkersten* 'fellow-man'
alse: conj. 'as, like'
8 *houdt*: impv. 2nd pl. of *houden* 'to keep'
laetd: impv. 2nd pl. of *laten* 'to let, allow'
niemene: pron. 'nobody'
trecken: inf. 'to pull, drag'
vaen: inf. 'to catch'
9 *ghiften*: dat. f. pl. of *ghifte*, *ghift* 'present'
mieden: dat. f. pl. of *miede* 'reward, pay'
ufeninghen: dat. f. pl. of *ufeninghe* '(divine) worship'
10 *schine*: dat. m./nt. sg. of *schijn* 'appearance, pretence'
al: conj. 'if, even if'
schinet: *schinet* + *et*; *schinet*: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *schinen* 'to appear, seem'; *et*: cl. pron. 'it'
gheest: nom. m. sg. 'spirit'
wert: ind. 3rd. sg. pres. of *werden* 'to become'
vleesch: nom. nt. sg. 'flesh'
11 *mach*: ind. 3rd. sg. pres. of *moghen* 'to have reason to, be able, may'

- ghelooeven*: inf. 'to believe'
ufent: impv. 2nd pl. of *ufenen* 'to worship'
wilt: impv. 2nd pl. of *willen* 'to want, wish'
van: prep. 'by'
12 *gheufent sijn*: 'to be worshipped'
14 *onspoed*: nom. m. sg. 'adversity, ill-luck'
15 *venijn*: nom. nt. sg. 'venom'
16 *staet op uwe hoede*: 'be on your guard'
17 *doet*: impv. 2nd pl. of *doen* 'to do'
alse: conj. 'as, like'
die vroede: 'the wise (people)'
18 *bedrieghen*: inf. 'to deceive, cheat'
19 *werddi ghetoghen*: 'If you are tempted'
20 *sijt*: ind. 2nd pl. of *sijn* 'to be'
bedroghen: pp. of *bedrieghen* 'to deceive, cheat'
21 *sal ... lieghen*: 'shall lie'
22 *laetd ... varen*: impv. 2nd pl. of *laten varen* 'to give up'
23 *nemt ... ware*: impv. 2nd pl. of *ware nemen* (+ gen.) 'to pay attention to'
24 *brudegooem*: acc. m. sg. of *brudegooem* 'bridegroom'
25 *scuwet*: impv. 2nd pl. of *scuwen* 'to avoid'
vremde: adj. *vremt*, *vremde* 'unknown, unfamiliar'
gaste: acc. m. pl. of *gast* 'stranger, (unknown) person'
26 *blijft ... vaste*: 'remain closely connected'
27 *nemt ... gooem*: impv. 2nd pl. of *gooem nemen* (+ gen.) 'to observe, pay attention to'
28 *keert*: impv. 2nd pl. of *keren* (refl.) 'to turn (around)'
binnen: adv. 'inward'
29 *pleeght*: impv. 2nd pl. of *pleghen* (+ gen.) 'to practice'
ghieregher: adj. *ghierech* 'desirous, greedy'
30 *dooght*: gen. f. sg. of *dooght* 'virtue'
31 *sal ... spisen*: 'will feed'
32 *(sal) ... leeren ende wisen*: '(will) teach and guide'
33 *vooght*: nom. m. sg. 'guardian'
34 *sal ... vuren*: 'will lead' (*vuren* is usually spelled *voeren*)
35 *boven*: prep. 'above'
ghebueren: acc. m. pl. of *ghebuer* 'neighbor'
36 *scooet*: acc. m./f. sg. of *scooet* 'lap, womb'
37 *vendi*: *vend* + *i*; *vend*: ind. 2nd sg./pl. of *venden* (usually spelled *vinden*); *i*: cl. pron. 'you'
trouwe: acc. f. sg. of *trouwe* 'faithfulness, loyalty'
38 *boete*: acc. f. sg. of *boete* 'compensation'
rouwe: dat. m. sg. of *rouwe*, *rou* 'mourning'
39 *nooed*: dat. f. sg. of *nooed* 'distress, want'

10.2. Complex sentences II: conditional and concessive clauses

A conditional or concessive clause may be expressed by placing the finite verb in initial position, followed by the subject. If the negative *en*, *ne* occurs in the clause, it immediately precedes the verb. Examples of such clauses are:

- (97) *ne waert ghi waert verloren.* (3:22)
neg. part. would.be.it you would.be lost
'If it did not exist, you would be lost.'
- (98) *Seidi hare sijn hoghe gheslachte ...*
told.you her his high lineage
Soe mochte si hem segghen dan
then might she him tell then
Hoe dat hi ware comen hier. (6:19-23)
how he had come here
'If you told her about his high ancestry, then she might tell him how he had come here.'
- (99) *Sal uwe ziele reine sijn, soe moetti ...*
shall your soul pure be then must.you
haten
hate
ende versmaden alle ongheordende liefde. (10:1-2)
and despise all inappropriate love
'If your soul shall be pure, then you must hate and despise all inappropriate love.'
- (100) *Werddi ghetoghen,*
are.you tempted
Ghi sijt bedroghen. (10:19-20)
you are deceived
'If you were to be tempted, you would be deceived.'
- (101) *Jc soude te hove sijn ghegaen*
I would to court have gone
Al haddet ghi mi niet gheraden. (8:8-9)
even.if had.it you me not advised
'I would have gone to court, even if you had not advised me to do so.'
- (102) *Al schinet goet,*
even.if appears.it good

Het *wert* *onspoet*,
 it becomes misfortune
Ende *al* *venijn*. (10:13-15)
 and all venom
 'Even if it appears good, it will all become misfortune and venom.'

Note that concessive clauses may be introduced by *al* 'if, even if'.

10.3. Verbs: introduction

The verb system of Middle Dutch has the following features: (a) two tenses: the present and the preterit; (b) two numbers: the singular and the plural; (c) three persons; (d) three moods: the imperative, the indicative, and the subjunctive; (e) one voice: the active; In addition, there are two nominal forms for each verb: the infinitive, which ends in *en* (or *n*), and the participles (present and past).

In Middle Dutch, a verb in the present tense may convey future meaning. However, it is also possible to use a periphrastic form in order to express future meaning: the auxiliary verb *sullen* followed by an infinitive. Activities or states in the past can be expressed in the preterit tense or by means of a compound tense which consists of the auxiliary *hebben*, *sijn* or *wesen* and a past participle. In some manuscripts, the present tense of the verb may be used to refer to an action or a state in the past. Middle Dutch expresses passive notion by means of an auxiliary verb (*sijn*, *wesen*, or *werden*) and a past participle.

Disregarding a few irregular cases (e.g. *doen* 'to do', *willen* 'to want, wish'), Middle Dutch verbs fall into one of the following three categories:

(i) Strong verbs: These verbs are characterized by an alternation of the stem vowel in the preterit and in the past participle. Past participles of strong verbs end in *en*. Examples of such verbs are: *schinen* 'to seem, shine', *laten* 'to let', *vinden* 'to find'.

(ii) Weak verbs: These verbs are characterized by the occurrence of the affix *(e)d* in the preterit tense. Past participles of weak verbs end in a dental stop. Examples of weak verbs are: *haten* 'to hate', *minnen* 'to love, like'. There is also a small number of irregular weak verbs, e.g. *brenghen* 'to bring', *copen* 'to buy'.

(iii) Preterit-presents: A few verbs belong to this class. Preterit-presents are verbs whose original preterit tense form acquired present tense meaning. Their new preterit form follows the pattern of weak verbs, i.e. they take a

dental affix in the preterit. Their past participle may end in *en* or in a dental stop. Examples of preterit-present verbs are: *moeten* 'to have to', *moghen* 'to be able, may'.

The stem of a verb consists of the infinitive without final *n* or *en*: e.g. *doen* 'to do': stem: *doe*; *minnen* 'to love, like': stem: *minn*; *nemen* 'to take': stem: *nem*.

10.4. The imperative

10.4.1. The imperative singular

A direct command addressing one person can be expressed by using the singular imperative form of the verb. In Middle Dutch, the singular imperative form consisted of the verb stem, either (a) without any person/number ending, e.g. *werp* 'throw' (inf. *werpen*), *nem* 'take' (inf. *nemen*), *blijf* 'remain, stay' (inf. *bliven*), *peins* 'think' (inf. *peinzen*), *sech* 'say' (inf. *segghen*); or (b) followed by the ending *e*, e.g. *neme* 'take' (inf. *nemen*), *draech* 'carry, wear' (inf. *dragen*), *slape* 'sleep' (inf. *slapen*), *segghe* 'say' (inf. *segghen*), *vruchte* 'fear' (inf. *vruchten*). It may happen that the person/number ending *e* is apocopated, while the stem vowel still shows lengthening, e.g. *neem* 'take'.

Note that a few verbs have an irregular imperative singular form: *sich* 'see' (inf. *sien*), *dwach* 'wash' (inf. *dwaen*), *slach* 'hit' (inf. *slaen*), *vlich* 'escape, flee' (inf. *vlien*), *doch* 'do' (inf. *doen*).

The verb *sijn* 'to be' has irregular imperative forms in the singular: *wes*, *bes*, *si*.

10.4.2. The imperative plural

The plural imperative form of a verb consists of the stem followed by the person/number ending (*e*)*d*, which occurs as (*e*)*t* in final position. This form could be used to address a group of persons as well as one single person. The reading selection at the beginning of this chapter contains many imperatives in the plural form: e.g. *blijft* (inf. *blijven*) 'remain, stay', *scuwet* (inf. *scuwen*) 'avoid', *staet* (inf. *staen*) 'stand', *laet* (inf. *laten*) 'let'.

Note that complete assimilation occurs if the verb stem ends in *d* or *t*, e.g. *laet* 'let'.

The verb *sijn* 'to be' has the following imperative forms in the plural: *weest, sijt*.

The subject is not expressed in clauses containing an imperative. The verb may occur in initial position, or it may be preceded by one or more constituents. If there is a negation present in the clause, the negative particle *en, ne* immediately precedes the imperative. Examples of sentences with an imperative are:

- | | | | |
|-------|---|---------------------------|--|
| (103) | <i>Ne</i>
neg. part.
'Do not fear.' | <i>vruchte</i>
fear | <i>niet.</i> (3:15)
not |
| (104) | <i>Ne</i>
neg. part.
'Don't be lazy.' | <i>sijt</i>
be | <i>niet lat.</i> (3:20)
not lazy |
| (105) | <i>Dat</i>
that | <i>aenbeet</i>
worship | <i>daer loept alle.</i> (3:24)
hither run all |
| (106) | <i>Staet</i>
stand | <i>op uwe</i>
on your | <i>hoede.</i> (10:16)
guard |

Chapter 11

Anthonis de Roovere (II)

11.1. Reading and textual analysis: Anthonis de Roovere

Poetry written by Rhetoricians may be classified into three categories: *int vroede*, *int amoureuze* and *int sotte*. Poems written *int vroede* (with wisdom) dealt with moral or didactic issues and often were devoted to explicitly religious topics. Love poetry, or poems *int amoureuze* (with love) were especially popular among the Rhetoricians. The third category, poetry *int sotte* (with humor) included ludicrous poems.

Anthonis de Roovere (circa 1430-1482) is generally considered one of the most important poets of the fifteenth-century Chambers of Rhetoric. A bricklayer in Bruges, he joined the Chamber at the age of seventeen. He is best remembered for his poetry *int vroede*, of which the "Testament van een Goede Vrouwe" (Chapter 7) is a fine example.

The works of Anthonis de Roovere were published posthumously by Eduard de Dene (1505-1578) in the year 1562 in the *Rhetoricale Wercken* [Rhetorical Works]. It must be stressed that this edition only includes part of de Roovere's literary production. During his own lifetime, de Roovere achieved fame with his poem "Lof vanden Heilighen Sacramente" [Praise of the Holy Sacrament], which is still on display in the Cathedral of Bruges. Besides religious poetry, de Roovere also wrote some prose and plays, and some wonderful love poems, such as the "Refereyn Amoureux" [Enamoured Refrain]. A refrain usually consisted of five to ten stanzas. Each stanza contained between eight to twenty lines, and all stanzas ended in the same verse line, called *stock*. (See 7.1)

Refereyn Amoureux

- 1 *Myn herte niet el dan druck besluyt*
 Ick vinde my seluen al swaer beducht
 Ick haecke tot den wint wordt zuydt
 Want mijn lieffelijck lief reedt derwaerts wt
5 *Dus coempt van daer den zoeten lucht*
 Mijn ooghen staen naer der coempste ter vlucht
 En segghe dit woordt van wijlen eer
 Daer lief daer ooghe / daer handt daer seer.

- 10 *O zuyderste lucht die my beraeyt*
Mijnen boesem ontdoe ick soe ick best mach
Mijn herten is soe vele te bat ghepaeyt
Dat ick metten winde mach zijn bewaeyt
Hy coempt van daer ick hem rijden sach
Al ist van trooste een cleyn beiach
15 *Tghesichte neemt derwaerts zijnen keer*
Daer lief daer ooghe / daer handt daer seer.

- Ick vanghe den windt / ick en hebs niet el*
Tconfoort is cleyne dat ick hier schouwe
Maer men pleech te segghene in een spel
20 *Een luttelken helpt den lecker wel*
Diet nauwe staet / die nemet nauwe
Dus stae ick als een bedruckte vrouwe
En haecke / ken wiste, wat segghen meer
Daer lief daer ooghe / daer handt daer seer.

- 25 *Princhelijck Lief, diemen in eeren noomt*
Daer ick eens sdaechs nae te siene pooghe
Maer tis een saecke die luttel vroomt
Te siene nae eene die niet en coomt
Dus seg ick als die lijden dooghe
30 *Daer handt daer seer / daer lief daer ooghe.*

- 1 *el*: adv. 'else'
druck: acc. m. sg. of *druck* 'dejection, depression'
besluyt: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *besluten* 'to encircle, enclose'
2 *vinde*: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *vinden* 'to find, think'
swaer: adv. 'heavily, very much'
beducht: pp. of *beduchten* 'to fear, be afraid of'
3 *haecke*: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *haecken* 'to hanker, crave'
wint: nom. m. sg. 'wind'
wordt: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *werden, worden* 'to become'
zuydt: adv. 'southern'
4 *lieffelijck*: adj. *lieffelijck* 'charming, sweet'
lief: nom. nt. sg. 'lover'
reedt wt: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *wtriden* 'to go off to war'
derwaerts: adv. 'thither'
5 *dus*: adv. 'thus, therefore'
coempt: (spelled *coomt* in l. 28) ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *comen* 'to come' (*p* is an epenthetic consonant, i.e. it eases the pronunciation between the final *m* of the stem and the person/number ending.)

- 6 *staen naer der coempste ter vlucht*: 'soon await the arrival'
 7 *segghe*: (*seg* in l. 29) ind. 1st sg. pres. of *segghen* 'to say'
wijlen eer: adv. 'formerly, in former times'
 8 *seer*: nom. nt./m. sg. 'pain, agony'
 9 *zuyderste*: adj. *zuyderst* 'southern'
die: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *zuyderste lucht*)
beraeyt: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *beraeyen* 'to shine, beam'
 10 *boesem*: acc. m. sg. of *boesem* 'bosom, chest'
ontdoe: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *ontdoen* 'to open'
soe: conj. 'as'
 11 *is so vele te bat ghepaeyt*: 'is so much happier'
 12 *dat*: conj., here: 'if'
zijn: inf. 'to be'
bewaeyt: pp. of *bewaeyen* 'to blow in the wind, flutter'
 13 *rijden*: inf. 'to ride'
sach: ind. 1st sg. pret. of *sien* 'to see'
 14 *trooste*: dat. m. sg. of *troost* 'comfort, consolation'
cleyne: adj. *cleyne*, *cleyne* 'small'
beiach: nom. nt. sg. 'profit, benefit'
 15 *tgesichte*: *t* + *gesichte*; *t*: cl. art. 'the'; *gesichte*: nom. nt. sg. 'face'
neempt: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *nemen* 'to take' (with epenthetic *p*)
keer: acc. m. sg. of *keer* 'turn'
 17 *vanghe*: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *vanghen* 'to catch'
hebs: *hebbe* + *es*; *hebbe*: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *hebben* 'to have';
and *es*: cl. pron. '(of) it'
 18 *tconfoort*: *t* + *confoort*; *t*: cl. art. 'the'; *confoort*: nom. nt. sg. 'relief, help'
dat: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *tconfoort*)
schouwe: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *schouwen* 'to view, see'
 20 *pleech te segghene*: 'is used to say'
in een spel: 'for fun, for the fun of it'
 21 *luttelken*: nom. nt. sg. 'a little' (diminutive formation)
help: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *helpen* 'to help'
lecker: acc. m. sg. of *lecker* 'epicure, hedonist'
 22 *diet nauwe staet*: 'whoever does not have a lot'
die nemet nauwe: '(that person) should pay attention to small things.'
 23 *stae*: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *staen* 'to stand'
bedruckte: pp. of *bedrucken* 'to sadden'
 24 *ken* = *ic* + *en*
wiste: subj. II, 1st sg. of *weten* 'to know'
wat: conj. 'what'
segghen: inf. 'to say'

- 25 *meer*: 'more'
princhelijck: adj. *princhelijck* 'princely'
diemen: *die* + *men*; *die*: rel. pron. 'who' (antecedent is *Princhelijck Lief*); *men*: pron. 'one'
noomt: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *nomen* (usually spelled *noemen*) 'to name, mention'
- 26 *eens sdaechs*: 'one day'
ick ... te siene pooghe: 'I endeavor to see ...'
- 27 *saecke*: nom. f. sg. 'matter, thing'
die: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *een saecke*)
luttel: adv. 'little'
vroomt: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *vromen* 'to avail, strengthen'
- 28 *te siene nae*: 'to care for'
eene: pron. 'someone'
die: rel. pron. 'who' (antecedent is *eene*)
- 29 *als die tlijden dooghe*: 'who patiently suffers'

11.2. Sentence negation

Sentence negation in Middle Dutch is usually expressed by means of two elements: the particle *en*, *ne* and another negative element, such as *niet* 'not', *nooit* 'never', *nie* 'never', *niemen* 'nobody', *nerghent* 'nowhere', *niewaer* 'nowhere', *niegherinck* 'nowhere', *nemmermeer* 'never again', *no ... no* 'neither ... nor'. The negative particle *en*, *ne* immediately precedes the finite verb, while the second element (*niet*, etc.) occurs at some place after the verb, except in those dependent clauses where the verb occupies the final position, e.g.

- (107) *Die inghel seide ne vruchte niet.* (3:15)
 the angel said neg. part. fear not
 'The angel said: Do not fear.'
- (108) *By hem en es smerte no galle.* (3:23)
 near it neg. part. is grief nor anger
 'Near it [the child] there is neither grief nor anger.'
- (109) *Dat en seldi haer vertrecken niet.* (6:15)
 that neg. part. shall.you her tell not
 'You shall not tell that to her.'

- (110) *En wilt oec van niemene gheufent sijn.*
 neg. part. want also by nobody be worshipped
 (10:11-12)
 'Do not want to be worshipped by anyone either.'

en, ne can also occur in the form of a clitic, e.g. *dan* (< *dat* 'that' + *en*), *hen* (< *het* 'it' + *en*), *hine* (< *hi* 'he' + *ne*), *in, ken* (< *ic* 'I' + *en*), *inne* (< *ic* 'I' + *ne*), *men* (< *men* 'one' + *en*), *menne* (< *men* 'one' + *ne*), e.g.

- (111) *Men mach hen niet ghelooeven.* (10:11)
 one.neg. part. may them not believe
 'One must not believe them.'
- (112) *Hen was noit man die danen*
 there.neg. part. was never man who from.there
sciet. (17:25)
 returned
 'There has never been a man who returned from there.'

It is possible to compound several negative elements within one sentence in Middle Dutch. This could be done in order to stress the negation, e.g.

- (113) *Niewer was orloghe no strijt.*
 nowhere was war nor fight
 'There wasn't any war or fight anywhere.'

In a few instances, the negative particle *en, ne* occurs alone, without *niet* or any other negating element. *en, ne* is used without any other negative element, if it occurs:

- (i) with the verbs *weten* 'to know' and *roeken* 'to matter (to someone), care', followed by an independent question, e.g.

- (114) *Sine weten wat best doen.*
 they.neg. part. know what best do
 'They do not know what would be the best thing to do.'
- (115) *Mi en roect wat ic doe.*
 me (D) neg. part. matter what I do
 'I do not care what I am doing.'

(ii) with the verb *moghen* 'to be able, may', e.g.

- (116) *Mine bliscap es so groot, dat ict*
 my joy is so big that I.it
gesegghen en mach
 describe neg. part. can
 'My joy is so big that I may not describe it.'

(iii) in short replies, in which the verb *doen* 'to do' replaces the verb phrase of the preceding statement, e.g.

- (117) *Ghi hout u spot.*
 you make your mockery
In doe.
 I.neg. part. do
 'You are joking. I am not.'

(iv) in questions to which the speaker expects an affirmative answer, e.g.

- (118) *En es Florijs mijn soete lief?*
 neg. part. is Florijs my sweet lover
 'Is Florijs not my sweet lover?'

(v) in the second part of disjunctive sentences, e.g.

- (119) *Eist u wille och en es.*
 is.it your will or neg. part. is
 'Be it your desire or not.'

Since *niet* or another negative element was so frequently combined with *en*, *ne*, the latter gradually lost its function as a negative. As a result, more recent Middle Dutch texts show a tendency to drop *en*, *ne*, provided that the negative meaning is still apparent by means of another word in the clause, e.g.

- (120) *Is Priamus niet dijn vader?*
 is Priamus not your father
 'Isn't Priamus your father?'

11.3. Indicative present of weak and strong verbs

The indicative present tense form of a verb consists of the infinitive stem of the verb plus the person/number endings listed in Table 21: (Parentheses indicate that the vowel is frequently syncopated.)

Table 21. The person/number endings for the indicative present tense

	singular	plural
first person	<i>e</i>	<i>en</i>
second person	<i>(e)s</i>	<i>(e)d</i>
third person	<i>(e)d</i>	<i>en</i>

Some variants for the person/number endings listed in Table 21 are the following:

First person singular:

1. The ending *e* may be apocopated in younger texts, e.g. *ic vint* 'I find', *ic groet* 'I greet'.
2. Stems ending in a vowel or a diphthong do not take the person/number ending *e*, e.g. *ic ont doe* 'I open', *ic sla* 'I hit'.
3. Some monosyllabic infinitives have the person/number ending *n*, i.e. following a stressed vowel, the *e* of the person/number ending is dropped: *ic gaen* 'I go', *ic staen* 'I stand'.

Second person singular:

4. The following person/number endings also occur: *(e)st*, *(e)ste*, *(e)ts*, and *(e)t*, e.g. *du vint* 'you find', *du sprecst* 'you speak', *du bliveste* 'you remain', *du gaets* 'you go'.
5. Stems ending in a fricative frequently have no person/number ending, e.g. *du peins* 'you think', *du sterf* 'you are dying'.

Third person singular/second person plural:

6. Stems ending in a dental stop do not usually show the person/number ending *(e)d*, e.g. *hi vint* 'he finds'.

First/third person plural:

7. Apocope of the *e* of the person/number ending occurs with stems that end in a vowel or diphthong, except *i* and *ei*, e.g. *wi gaen* 'we go', *wi slaen* 'we hit', but *si screyen* 'they cry'.

Table 22 exemplifies the conjugation pattern of a strong verb (*swemmen* 'to swim') and a weak verb (*maken* 'to make, do'):

Table 22. *swemmen* 'to swim' and *maken* 'to make': indicative present tense

infinitive	<i>swemmen</i> 'to swim'	<i>maken</i> 'to make, do'
<i>ic</i>	<i>swemme</i>	<i>make</i>
<i>du</i>	<i>swems, swemmes</i>	<i>maecs, makes</i>
<i>hi, si, het</i>	<i>swemt, swemmet</i>	<i>maect, maket</i>
<i>wi</i>	<i>swemmen</i>	<i>maken</i>
<i>ghi</i>	<i>swemt, swemmet</i>	<i>maect, maket</i>
<i>si</i>	<i>swemmen</i>	<i>maken</i>

Note that a few strong verbs may occasionally evince a stem vowel change from *a* to *e*, or from *e/e* to *i* in the 2nd/3rd sg. and 2nd pl. (i.e. umlaut of the stem vowel). Umlaut is not carried out systematically in Middle Dutch. It sometimes appears in Limburgic dialects, but rarely occurs anywhere else. Within one manuscript, one verb may be used with and without umlaut of the stem vowel, e.g. *slaen* 'to hit' *hi sleet/hi slaet*, *gheven* 'to give' *si ghift/si gheft*, *draghen* 'to carry, wear' *du dreechs/du dreghes* and *du draechs/du draghes*.

Phonological changes caused by clitics are discussed in 1.11.

11.4. Indicative present of irregular verbs

Four common verbs are irregular in the indicative present: *hebben* 'to have', *sijn* 'to be', *segghen* 'to say', and *legghen* 'to lay, put'. Their declension pattern is indicated in Table 23:

Table 23. *hebben* 'to have', *sijn* 'to be', *segghen* 'to say', *legghen* 'to lay, put': indicative present tense

infinitive	<i>hebben</i> 'to have'	<i>sijn</i> 'to be'	<i>segghen</i> 'to say'	<i>legghen</i> 'to lay, put'
<i>ic</i>	<i>hebbe</i>	<i>bem, ben</i>	<i>segghe</i>	<i>legghe</i>
<i>du</i>	<i>heves, heefs</i>	<i>bes, best</i>	<i>segghes, seechs</i>	<i>legghes, leechs</i>
<i>hi, si, het</i>	<i>hevet, heeft</i>	<i>is, es</i>	<i>segghet, seit</i> <i>seecht</i>	<i>legghet, leit</i> <i>leecht</i>

infinitive	<i>hebben</i> 'to have'	<i>sijn</i> 'to be'	<i>segghen</i> 'to say'	<i>legghen</i> 'to lay, put'
<i>wi</i>	<i>hebben</i>	<i>sijn</i>	<i>segghen</i>	<i>legghen</i>
<i>ghi</i>	<i>hebbet, hebt</i>	<i>sijt</i>	<i>segghet, seit</i>	<i>legghet, leit</i>
<i>si</i>	<i>hebben</i>	<i>sijn</i>	<i>seecht</i> <i>segghen</i>	<i>leecht</i> , <i>legghen</i>

Note that the clitic form of *is*, *es* is *s*, e.g. *dats* (< *dat* 'that' + *es*), *hijs* (< *hi* 'he' + *es*), *dans* (< *dat* 'that' + *en* + *es*).

Chapter 12

Vanden Vos Reynaerde [Reynard the Fox] (II)

12.1. Reading and textual analysis: *Vanden Vos Reynaerde* [Reynard the Fox]

The reading selection for this chapter is an excerpt from the beast epic *Vanden Vos Reynaerde*, which was also discussed in Chapter 8. The complete version of the Middle Dutch narrative is known through two manuscripts, both presently located in Germany. Some fragments have also been found. *Vanden Vos Reynaerde* must have enjoyed tremendous popularity. A Latin adaptation of the epic, *Reynardus Vulpes*, was prepared, and many imitations of the poem were written. During the fourteenth century, a Middle Dutch sequel, referred to as *Reynaert II*, was written by an anonymous author. As is often the case, the sequel does not attain the same quality as the original. It is, however, through this sequel that Reynard's story became known beyond the Dutch linguistic borders.

The excerpt below is taken from the second half of the original narrative. Reynard has just been sentenced to death by hanging, and the gallows are being prepared. Feigning repentance for his sins, he explains how he ended up on the wrong path as a result of being led astray by Isengrim, the wolf, who did not keep to his promises.

- 1 *Hi rekende dat hi ware mijn oem*
 Ende began eene sibbe tellen
 Al daer worden wi ghesellen
 Dat mach mi te rechte rauwen
5 *Daer gheloofden wi bi trauwen*
 Recht gheselschap manlic andren
 Doe begonsten wi te gader wandelen
 Hi stal tgroete ende ic dat cleene
 Dat wi beiaechden wart ghemeene
10 *Ende als wi deelen souden doe*
 Jc was in hueghen ende vroe
 Mocht ic mijn deel hebben half
 Alse ysingrijn beiaghede een calf
 Of eenen weder of eenen ram
15 *So grongierdi ende maecte hem gram*

- Ende toechde mi een ghelaet
 Datso zuer was ende so quaet
 Dat hi mi daer met van hem verdreef
 Ende hem mijn deel al gader bleef
 20 Nochtan hachtic niet van dien
 So menich waeruen hebbic versien
 Alse wi een groete proye lagheden
 Die ic ende mijn oem beiagheden
 Eenen osse of eenen bake
 25 Doe ghinc hi sitten met ghemake
 Met sinen wiue vrouwe harsenden
 Ende met sinen .vij. kindren
 Sone mochtic cume deene hebben
 Van den alre mintsten rebben
 30 Die sine kindre hadden ghecnaghet

- 1 *hi* = Isengrim
rekende: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *rekenen* 'to figure'
ware: subj. II, 3rd sg. of *wesen* 'to be'
oem: nom. m. sg. 'uncle'
 2 *began ... tellen*: 'began to calculate'
sibbe: acc. f. sg. of *sibbe* 'degree of (family) relationship'
 3 *al daer*: adv. 'there, at that place'
worden: ind. 1st pl. pret. of *werden* 'to become'
ghesellen: nom. m. pl. of *gheselle* 'companion, fellow'
 4 *te rechte*: 'rightly, justly'
rauwen: inf. 'to afflict, distress'
 5 *gheloofden*: ind. 1st pl. pret. of *gheloven* 'to promise, vow'
trauwen: dat. f. sg. of *trauwe* 'word of honor'
 6 *recht*: adj. *recht* 'right, good'
gheselschap: acc. nt. sg. of *gheselschap* 'companionship, fellowship'
manlic anderen: pron. 'to each other, to one another'
 7 *begonsten*: ind. 1st pl. pret. of *beginnen* 'to begin'
wandelen: inf. 'to wander about'
te gader: adv. 'together'
 8 *stal*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *stelen* 'to steal'
tgroete = *t* + *groete*
cleene = *cleine*
 9 *dat*: indef. rel. pron. 'whatever'
beiaechden: ind. 1st pl. pret. of *beiaghen* 'to hunt and catch'
wart: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *werden* 'to become'
ghemeene: adj. *ghemeene* 'joint, common'
 10 *als wi deelen souden*: 'when we were supposed to divide'
 11 *was*: ind. 1st sg. pret. of *wesen* 'to be'

- in hueghen*: 'happy, lucky'
vroe: adj. *vroe* 'cheerful, in high spirits'
 12 *mochtic*: *mochte* + *ic*; *mochte*: subj. II, 1sg. of *moghen* 'to be able, may'; *ic*: cl. pron. 'I'
deel: acc. nt. sg. of *deel* 'part'
half: adj. *half* 'half'
 13 *beiaghede*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *beiaghen* 'to hunt and catch'
calf: acc. nt. sg. of *calf* 'calf'
 14 *weder*: acc. m. sg. of *weder* 'wether'
ram: acc. m. sg. of *ram* 'ram'
 15 *grongierdi*: *grongierde* + *i*; *grongierde*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *grongieren* 'to growl, snarl'; *i*: cl. pron. 'he'
maecte hem gram: 'became angry'
 16 *toechde*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *toeghen* 'to show'
ghelaet: acc. nt. sg. of *ghelaet* 'appearance, look(s)'
 17 *datso*: *dat* + *so*; *dat*: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *een ghelaet*); *so*: adv. 'so'
zuer: adj. *zuer* 'spiteful, nasty'
quaet: adj. *quaet* 'angry'
 18 *verdreef*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *verdriven* 'to drive away, chase away'
 19 *bleef*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *bliven* 'to remain'
 20 *hachtic*: *hachte* + *ic*; *hachte*: ind. 1st sg. pret. of *hachten* (usually spelled *achten*) 'to worry about'; *ic*: cl. pron. 'I'
 21 *menich waeruen*: 'many times, often'
hebbic versien: 'I have noticed'
 22 *proye*: acc. f. sg. of *proye* 'prey'
lagheden: ind. 1st pl. pret. of *laghen* 'to ambush'
 23 *die*: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *een groete proye*)
beiagheden = *beiaechden*
 24 *osse*: acc. m. sg. of *osse* 'ox'
bake: acc. m. sg. of *bake* 'pig, swine'
 25 *ghinc ... sitten*: 'sat down'
gemake: dat. nt. sg. of *gemac* 'satisfaction, delight'
 26 *wiue*: dat. nt. sg. of *wijf* 'wife, spouse'
vrouwe harsenden: 'Dame Hersent'
 27 *vij*: num. 'seven'
 28 *sone*: *so* + *ne*
mochtic ... hebben: 'I might have'
cume: adv. 'barely'
 29 *alre mintsten*: 'smallest'
rebben: dat. f. pl. of *rebbe* 'rib'
 30 *die*: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *den alre mintsten ribben*)
hadden ghecnagher: 'had gnawed'

12.2. The Indo-European languages

Middle Dutch belongs to the Germanic branch of the Indo-European language family. The comparison of various languages of Europe and Asia has led to the assumption that many of these languages are related, i.e. that they derive from a common ancestor: Indo-European (IE). Systematic correspondences between several languages indicate a period of mutual development, while differences between those languages are explained as having originated at times of individual growth. By using what is known as the comparative method, linguists have been able to create a reconstructed parent-language, as far as existing data of its descendants permit. This reconstructed language, called Proto-Indo-European, is based upon careful comparison of older documented forms of Indo-European languages and reflects systematic correspondences between those documented forms. Reconstructed forms are designated by means of an asterisk before such a form. It is generally accepted that Indo-European was spoken at one time, however, no written documents in the language are available to us now.

Besides Germanic, many other language groups are derived from Indo-European. While it is beyond the scope of this book to give detailed information on all these language groups, the main Indo-European language groups are listed below, along with the date of the oldest written records available for each group.

Those language families that are commonly designated as the *centum*-group are: Celtic, Germanic, Greek, Hittite, Italic, and Tocharian. They are called *centum* languages, as certain IE **k* sounds were not modified in them: The initial consonant of the Latin word *centum* 'one hundred' is derived from an IE **k*. (cf. OIr. *cét*, Gk. *hekatón*, Goth. *hunds*, which are all cognates of Lat. *centum*.)

The oldest inscriptions in Celtic date to the fifth and sixth centuries of our era. The Celts probably inhabited large parts of continental Europe during the second half of the first millennium B.C., and there was even a Galatian colony as far as Asia Minor. The language of the Celtic tribes did not survive the subsequent Roman and Germanic dominions. However, many place names in continental Europe still reflect the existence of Celtic settlements. For linguistic purposes, Old Irish is the most important of the Celtic languages. Many Old Irish documents from the eleventh century are available, and the language shows little Latin influence. The Celtic languages are usually divided into two groups: (a) Brythonic, which includes Welsh, Cornish, and Breton, and (b) Goidelic, for which three languages, Irish, Manx, and Scots Gaelic are attested.

The Mycenaean Greek inscriptions, which are the oldest documents available in Greek or Hellenic date back to approximately 1450 - 1200 B.C. They were found on the Isle of Crete and on the mainland of Greece. For

was the reigning world language. There were many Greek dialects, but most of what now constitutes classical Greek literature was written in Attic-Ionic.

For the Germanic language group, the oldest extant manuscript is a Bible translation into Gothic by a bishop, Wulfila (311-383 A.D.). Gothic was spoken in Eastern Europe, but is now an extinct language. The Germanic languages are discussed in a more detailed manner in Chapter 13.

The best known old Italic languages are Latin and Oscan-Umbrian. Starting from the second century B.C., a vast number of documents in Latin are available. The oldest Latin inscription has been dated to the years 600 B.C. From the so-called Vulgar Latin, i.e. from the spoken dialects, the Romance languages came into being. The major Romance languages are Catalan, French, Italian, Rumanian, Portuguese, Provençal, and Spanish. Dalmatian, which was spoken in part of Italy, has become extinct since 1898, when its last native speaker died. There are also three minor Romance languages: Sardinian, Rhaeto-Romance, and Romantsch or Ladin. The Italic language group shares some characteristics with the Celtic branch.

Hittite was the language spoken in the empire of the Hittites, formed in Asia Minor during the second millenium B.C. Although the vocabulary of Hittite contains many non Indo-European elements, its grammar shares affinities with other Indo-European languages. The written records available in this language are dated approximately 1400 B.C.

The Tocharian branch of the Indo-European language family is now extinct. Tocharian was spoken before the tenth century A.D. in Western China.

The second major IE language group is called the *satem* group: In these languages, IE **k* shifted to a sibilant. The word *satem* is Avestan for "one hundred". The Satem language families are Albanian, Armenian, Baltic, Indo-Iranian, and Slavic.

When compared to other Indo-European languages, there are few old records from the Albanian language group. The oldest extant records written in Albanian are translations of the book of Matthew, from the fifteenth century. Albanian is now the national language of Albania.

The oldest records available in Armenian are for the most part translations of Christian writings. Some of these can be dated to the fifth century A.D. There are two branches of Armenian: (a) the Eastern, spoken in Iran, India, and the USSR, and (b) the Western, spoken in Lebanon, Syria, and elsewhere in the Middle East. The Armenian vocabulary contains many loan words from Classical Persian, which motivated linguists of the nineteenth century to classify Armenian as an Iranian dialect, although this has since proven fallacious.

The Baltic language group includes Lithuanian, Latvian (Lettish), and Old Prussian. While the first two languages are still in use, Prussian became extinct near the end of the seventeenth century and is known primarily through writings from the mid-sixteenth century. The earliest available

record in Lithuanian is a translation of Luther's catechism, dated 1547. Lithuanian is believed to have retained more features of the original Indo-European language than any other surviving language. Latvian (Lettish) is less conservative than Lithuanian. The earliest Latvian texts exist only since the sixteenth century.

The Indo-Iranian group has two coordinate branches: Indian and Iranian. Among the older Indian languages, Classical Sanskrit is best known. Some nineteenth-century philologists even (wrongly) suggested that this might have been the language from which all other IE languages were derived. Sanskrit is not the oldest language in the Indian group. The oldest extant Indian records are written in Vedic, which is known through the *Rigveda*, a collection of more than one thousand hymns, dated from 1500 to 500 B.C. Old Indian, as found in the Vedic hymns, is of special interest to historical linguists, since it faithfully reflects the accentual system of Indo-European. The Prakrits are the Middle Indian dialects, which are dated from circa 400 B.C. to 1000 A.D. and which developed into the Modern Indian dialects such as Hindi, Urdu, Bengali, or Romany (Gypsy). Records for the Iranian languages are less abundant and younger than is the case for Indian. The principal dialects of Ancient Iranian (600-300 B.C.) are Old Persian and Avestan. Avestan was probably extinct by 400 B.C. The *Avesta*, the sacred book of the Zoroastrian religion, is our main source of information on this language. It may date back to as early as 600 B.C. The oldest available written materials in Old Persian are inscriptions that record the achievements of Darius (reign: 521-486 B.C.) and Xerxes (reign: 486-465 B.C.). Many Iranian languages are in use today, e.g. Tadjik, Baluchi, Afghan, Farsi, Kurdish, and Ossetic.

The oldest Slavic text available is a Bible translation from the ninth century A.D. By that time, the Slavic peoples were spread over a large geographical area, yet their language displayed only minor differences in dialect. Slavic embraces three subgroups: East Slavic (Great Russian, Ukrainian, White Russian), West Slavic (Polish, Czech, Slovak, Wendic/Sorbian), and South Slavic (Bulgarian, Serbo-Croatian, Slovenian). Some grammars list Baltic and Slavic together under the name Balto-Slavic since both branches have preserved a number of common linguistic features from the Indo-European parent language.

12.3. Interrogative sentences

Interrogative sentences fall into two categories: The first type is introduced by a pronominal or adverbial question word and triggers some specific information different from "yes" or "no" in its answer. The second type is often referred to as a "yes/no question", as its answer requires an affirmative

or a negative statement. Interrogative sentences usually have verb + subject word order.

(i) Questions asking for specific information: An interrogative pronoun or an interrogative adverb is typically placed in first position of the clause, the finite verb occurs in second position, followed by the subject, e.g.

- (121) *Waer sidi, hoghe gheborne wigant,*
 where are.you highly born warrior
Van Damast gheweldich coninc? (6:2)
 of Damascus powerful king
 'Where are you, noble warrior, powerful king of Damascus?'
- (122) *Reynaert wat haetstu? (8:16)*
 Reynard what ate.you
 'Reynard, what did you eat?'

The question word may be an interrogative pronoun, an interrogative adverb, or the interrogative adjective *welc* 'which' followed by a noun. The interrogative pronoun corresponding to English "who" is *wie*. The pronoun corresponding to English "what" is *wat*. Table 24 indicates the forms of the interrogative pronouns *wie* and *wat* in the different cases:

Table 24. *wie* 'who' and *wat* 'what'

	<i>wie</i> 'who'	<i>wat</i> 'what'
N	<i>wie</i>	<i>wat</i>
A	<i>wien</i>	<i>wat</i>
D	<i>wien</i>	<i>wien</i>
G	<i>wies, wes</i>	<i>wies, wes</i>

- (123) *Wien en sal dit niet ter herten*
 whom neg. part. shall this not to.the heart
gaen? (19:49)
 go
 'Who shall by this not be moved?'
- (124) *Reynaert wat haetstu? (8:16)*
 Reynard what ate.you
 'Reynard, what did you eat?'

Some common interrogative adverbs are: *waer* 'where', *wanen* 'whence', *waerhenen* 'whither', *hoe* 'how, by what means', *wanneer* 'when', *waerom(me)*, *twi* 'why', e.g.

- (125) *Waer naemdi die hoofde bede?* (17:7)
 where took.you the heads both
 'Where did you take those two heads?'

(ii) Yes/no questions: In a yes/no question, the finite verb occurs in initial position and the subject follows, e.g.

- (126) *Suldi mi onthouden nu?* (17:19)
 will.you me employ now
 'Will you employ me now?'

12.4. Indicative preterit of weak verbs

The indicative preterit tense of weak verbs consists of the infinitive stem of the verb, to which the preterit tense marker (*e*)*d* and a person/number ending are added. The person/number endings are listed in Table 25:

Table 25. The person/number endings for weak verbs in the indicative preterit tense

	singular	plural
first person	<i>e</i>	<i>en</i>
second person	<i>es</i>	<i>ed</i>
third person	<i>e</i>	<i>en</i>

Note that the person/number ending of the second person plural usually appears in final position and is thus devoiced.

The reading excerpt at the beginning of this chapter contains some weak verbs in the indicative preterit, e.g. *ysingrijn beiaghede* 'Ysengrijn caught', *wi gheloofden* 'we promised', *hi toechde* 'he showed', *wi lagheden* 'we ambushed'. Table 26 exemplifies the conjugation pattern of the weak verb *leven* 'to live' in the preterit tense:

Table 26. *leven* 'to live': indicative preterit tense

singular	plural
<i>ic levede, leefde</i>	<i>wi leveden, leefden</i>
<i>du levedes, leefdes</i>	<i>ghi levedet, leefdet</i>
<i>hi, si, het levede, leefde</i>	<i>si leveden, leefden</i>

12.4.1. The preterit tense marker

In older Middle Dutch texts, the preterit tense marker is *ed*. Younger manuscripts show a preference for the syncopated affix *d*. However, it is not uncommon to find both *d* and *ed* used by the same scribe within one manuscript. The Middle Dutch passage at the beginning of this chapter exemplifies this: *wi beiaechden* 'we caught', but: *ic ende mijn oem beiagheden* 'I and my uncle caught'.

The syncope of *e* in the preterit tense marker could trigger assimilation: if a stem ended in a voiceless consonant, the syncopated preterit tense marker *d* became voiceless *t*, e.g. *si maecte* (inf. *maken*) 'she made', *hi hoopte* (inf. *hopen*) 'he hoped', *hi haette* (inf. *haten*) 'he hated'.

Generally speaking, syncope of *e* in the preterit tense marker is attested earliest in verbs whose stem ends:

(i) in a single liquid or nasal, e.g. *si haelde* (inf. *halen*) 'she fetched', *hi weende* (inf. *wenen*) 'he cried'.

(ii) in a dental stop, e.g. *hi haette* (inf. *haten*) 'he hated', *si troosten* (inf. *troosten*) 'they comforted'.

(iii) in a sibilant, e.g. *si vreesden* (inf. *vresen*) 'they feared'.

If a stem ends in a weakly stressed syllable, *e* is always syncopated, e.g. *si wandelden* (inf. *wandelen*) 'they walked'. Verbs with stems ending in *ll* and *rr* usually took the full preterit tense marker *ed*, e.g. *ic merrede* 'I lingered', *si callede* 'she spoke'.

12.4.2. Person/number endings

In the first and third person singular, a final *n* occasionally occurs in the dialect of *Limburg*, e.g. *ic hoorden* 'I heard', *he keerden* 'he turned'.

As is the case with the present tense, there are also variants of the person/number ending *(e)s* in the preterit tense: *(e)st*, *(e)ste*, *(e)t*, *(e)ts*, etc. The instability of the second person singular person/number ending is probably due to the increasing use of the personal pronoun *ghi* to address one person. This may have caused confusion in the speaker as to the choice of personal ending, i.e. it may have been unclear whether to use the second person singular or plural person/number ending.

12.5. Past participles of weak verbs

Past participles of weak verbs in Middle Dutch show evidence of two affixes: one prefix, *ghe*, which does not always occur, and one obligatory suffix, *(e)d*. Examples of past participles with both affixes are: *ghehoort* 'heard', *ghestoort* 'disturbed, destroyed', *ghecnaghet* 'gnawed', *ghedient* 'served'.

The prefix *ghe* does not appear if the infinitive already has an unaccented prefix, such as *be*, *ghe*, *ont*, *ver*, *te*, *vol*, *mes*, e.g. *bedect* 'covered', *testoort* 'destroyed'. Past participles of verbs of foreign origin often do not take *ghe* either, e.g. *benedijt* (inf. *benediën*) 'blessed'.

The full suffix *ed* occurs most frequently in older documents, while there is a tendency to syncopate the weakly stressed *e* in younger texts. If the reduced suffix *d* occurs to the immediate right of a voiceless consonant or if *(e)d* occurs in final position, its stop is devoiced, e.g. *ghecnaghet* 'gnawed'.

Past participles in Middle Dutch are used:

- (i) in combination with the auxiliary verb *hebben*, *sijn* or *wesen* to form a perfect tense (See 16.4).
- (ii) in combination with the auxiliary verbs *wesen*, *sijn* or *werden* to form a passive expression (See 19.3).
- (iii) as an attributive or predicate adjective. If a past participle is used as an attributive adjective, it takes an adjective ending (See 19.5).

12.6. *segghen* 'to say' and *legghen* 'to lay, put'

segghen 'to say' and *legghen* 'to lay, put' are irregular in the preterit tense: *ic seghede*, *du seghedes*; *ic leghede*, *du leghedes*, etc. One also frequently finds a stem with the diphthong *ei*: *ic seide*, *du seides*; and *ic leide*, *du leides*, etc.

Attested past participles are *gheseghet*, *gheseit*; *gheleghet*, *gheleit*.

12.7. Separable-prefix verbs

Some Middle Dutch verbs may be accompanied by an adverb-prefix which modifies the meaning of the simple verb. Examples of such verbs are: *aenbidden* 'to worship, adore', *ophouden* 'to raise, lift up', *aennemen* 'to accept'. These verbs are either (a) separable, i.e. the adverb-prefix may be separated from the verb stem in certain environments or (b) inseparable, i.e. the adverb-prefix is never detached from the verb stem. Some verbs could be used both as a separable- and as an inseparable-prefix verb within a similar syntactic environment. The prefix is weakly stressed if it is not separable, while separable-prefix verbs carry stress on the prefix. It has been suggested that these verbs were used in their literal meaning when the prefix could be separated, but with metaphorical, abstract connotations when the prefix could not be separated. This rule, however, has not provided a satisfactory explanation for every instance.

The prefix can separate from the verb-stem in the following situations:

(i) Main clauses:

1. Finite verb: the prefix follows the verb-stem, as in (127):

- (127) *Hi deedse an.* (13:10, inf. *andoen*)
 he put.them on
 'He put them on.'

2. Imperative: the prefix follows the verb-stem, as in (128):

- (128) *Stant op.* (4:27, inf. *opstanden*)
 get up
 'Get up!'

(ii) Dependent clauses:

1. Finite verb: the prefix follows the verb-stem, as in (129):

- (129) *Daerom waest dat ic stont op.*
 therefore was.it that I got up
 'It was for that reason that I got up.'

2. Finite verb modified by the negative particle *en*, *ne*: the negative particle stands between the prefix and the verb-stem, as in (130):

- (130) *Dinghe die hem niet toe en hoerden.*
 things which him not belonged.neg. part.
 (inf. *toehoeren*)
 'Things which did not belong to him'

(iii) Infinitive constructions:

1. With *te* 'to': *te* stands between the prefix and the verb-stem, as in (131):

- (131) *Doe hi dese maechden waende omme te helsen.*
 then he these maidens imagined to embrace
 (inf. *ommehelsen*)
 'Then he imagined to be embracing these maidens.'

2. With an auxiliary verb: the auxiliary separates the prefix and the verb-stem, as in (132):

- (132) *Ende nieuwe cousen ende nieuwe scoen,*
 and new stockings and new shoes
Die die rudder an sal doen. (13:16-17, inf. *andoen*)
 which the knight will.put.on
 'And new stockings and new shoes, which the knight will put on.'

(iv) Past participles: the prefix and the verb-stem are separated by *ghe*, as in (133):

- (133) *Die heer heeft onse crancheit aengetogen.*
 the Lord has our weakness put.on
 (19:46, inf. *aentien*)
 'The Lord has put on our weakness.'

Chapter 13

Walewein

13.1. Reading and textual analysis: *Walewein*

Many literary works in Middle Dutch were written in adaptation or in imitation of French works. This is especially true for the large number of chivalric romances produced in the thirteenth and fourteenth century. Such epic romances were usually written in rhymed verse and concentrated on the heroic exploits of knights. Chivalric romances historically fall into four types: Classical, Eastern, British (Arthurian), and Frankish romances. Classical romances were inspired by the writings of antiquity, especially by Ovid and Vergil. Two of the best known Classical romances in Middle Dutch are from the pen of Jacob van Maerlant (died 1300). Eastern romances were based on the Byzantine narratives which became popular at the time of the Crusades. *Floris ende Blancefloer*, introduced in Chapter 2, is a fine example of such a romance. British and Frankish romances were more popular in the Low Countries. An excerpt from *Karel ende Elegast* [Charles and Elegast], a famous Frankish romance, is introduced in Chapter 16. The reading passage for this chapter is taken from *Walewein*, a British romance.

British romances relate the adventures and exploits of King Arthur and the knights of the Round Table and contain many fantastic and extravagant elements. *Walewein* is the work of two Flemings, identifying themselves as Penninc, who wrote approximately 7,800 lines of the poem, and Pieter Vostaert, who was responsible for the last 3,300 lines. The poem was probably completed during the early thirteenth century and may be an original Middle Dutch work.

The plot of *Walewein* consists of a chain of adventures, which are initiated when a chessboard hovers in the air into King Arthur's castle and quickly vanishes. The king expresses his desire to possess it, and Walewein, the "father of adventures", offers to find and claim it for the king. Walewein eventually discovers that the chessboard belongs to King Wonder, who is willing to part with it in exchange for a sword with two rings, which is in the possession of King Amoraen. Walewein can only gain possession of the sword if he liberates the fair Ysabele, who is held captive by her father. Walewein does manage to free her, and Ysabele falls in love with him. On their way back, they find out that King Amoraen has died, so that Walewein can obtain the sword with two rings without having to leave Ysabele behind.

The sword is then brought to King Wonder, who gives him the chessboard in exchange. Having fulfilled his mission, Walewein returns to King Arthur's court, where the king is extremely pleased with his new toy. It is not certain, Vostaert concludes, whether Ysabele and Walewein ever married.

In the following excerpt, Walewein has just arrived at the court of King Wonder.

- 1 *Ic wane wel dat men noit ne vant*
 Cleder die waren also diere.
 Dat wonder was so menighertiere,
 Dat andie cledre stont ghewrocht,
 5 *Men hadse om dusedent pont niet ghecocht.*
 Hen es gheen clerc in al Parijs
 So wel gheleert no so wijs,
 Diet adde ghelesen oft gheraect
 Dat andie cleder was ghemaect.
 10 *Hi deedse an ende waser blide.*
 Die coninc adde ten selven tiden
 Doen maken een surcoot:
 Het was scarlakijn root
 Met ermenien uut ghewrocht.
 15 *Dit hevet men Waleweyne brocht:*
 Ende nieuwe cousen ende nieuwe scoen,
 Die die rudder an sal doen.
 Hie cleedde hem ende es upghestaen.
 Doe brochtemen Waleweyne saen
 20 *Een beckijn van roden goude,*
 Daer men hem mede dienen soude,
 Ende een hantvat dies ghelike,
 (Diet dede maken hi was rike).
 Men gaf hem water ende hi ghinc dwaen.
 25 *Doe brochtemen hem die dwale saen,*
 Daer hi sine hande mede droghen soude.
 Hi hadde al dat hi hebben woude.

- 1 *wel:* adv. 'well'
 noit: adv. 'never'
 vant: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *vinden* 'to find'
 2 *die:* rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *cleder*)
 also: adv. 'so'
 3 *wonder:* nom. nt. sg. 'wonder, marvel'
 menighertiere: adj. *menighertiere* 'various, manifold'
 4 *dat:* rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *dat wonder*)
 andie = *ane+ die*

- 5 *stont ghewrocht*: 'was performed'
hadse ... ghecocht: *had* + *se ghecocht* 'had bought them'; *had*:
 auxiliary verb in the ind. pret.; *se*: cl. pron. 'them'; *ghecocht*:
 pp. of *copen* 'to buy'
om: prep. 'for'
dusent: num. '(one) thousand'
pont: acc. nt. sg. 'pound'
 6 *clerc*: nom. m. sg. 'learned person, cleric'
Parijs: proper name 'Paris'
 7 *gheleert*: pp. of *leren* 'to learn'
wijs: adj. *wijs* 'wise'
 8 *diet*: *die* + *et*; *die*: rel. pron. 'who' (antecedent is *gheen clerc*); *et*:
 cl. pron 'it'
adde ghelesen: 'had read'; *adde*: (usually spelled *hadde*) auxiliary
 verb in the ind. pret.; *ghelesen*: pp. of *lesen* 'to read'
oft: conj. 'or'
(adde) gheraect: 'had touched'; *gheraect*: pp. of *raken* 'to touch'
 9 *dat*: indef. rel. pron. 'which'
was ghemaect: 'was made'
 10 *deedse an*: *deed* + *se an* 'put them on'; *deed an*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of
andoen 'to put on'; *se*: cl. pron. 'them'
waser: *was* + *er*; *was*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *wesen* 'to be'; *er*: cl.
 form of *daer*
blide: adj. *blide* 'glad, happy'
 11 *adde ... doen maken*: 'had had ... made'
ten selven tiden: 'at the same time'
 12 *surcoot*: acc. nt. sg. of *surcoot* 'large upper garment, lined with fur'
 13 *scarlakijn root*: adj. *scarlakijn root* 'scarlet red'
 14 *ermenien*: dat. nt. pl. of *ermenie* (usually spelled *hermenie*)
 'ermine'
uut ghewrocht: pp. of *uutwerken* 'to finish'
 15 *hevet ... brocht*: 'has brought'; *hevet*: auxiliary verb in the ind.
 pres.; *brocht*: pp. of *brenghen* 'to bring'
 16 *cousen*: acc. f. pl. of *couse* 'stocking'
scoen: acc. m. pl. of *scoe* 'shoe'
 17 *die*: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *nieuwe cousen ende nieuwe*
scoen)
rudder: nom. m. sg. 'knight'
an sal doen: 'will put on'; *sal*: auxiliary verb in the ind. pres.; *an*
doen: to put on
 18 *cleedde*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *cleden* 'to clothe, dress'
es upghestaen: 'has got up'; *es*: auxiliary verb in the ind. pres.;
upghestaen: pp. of *upstaen* 'to get up'

- 19 *brochtemen*: *brochte* + *men*; *brochte*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of
brenghen 'to bring'; *men*: pron. 'one'
- 20 *beckijn*: acc. nt. sg. of *beckijn* 'wash-basin'
- 21 *daer ... mede*: 'with which, by means of which'
- dienen soude*: 'was going to serve'
- 22 *hantvat*: acc. nt. sg. of *hantvat* 'tankard, waterjug'
- dies ghelike*: 'as well, too'
- 23 *diet*: *die* + *et*; *die*: indef. rel. pron. 'whoever'; *et*: cl. pron. 'it'
dede maken: 'had ... made'
- rike*: adj. *rike* 'rich, wealthy'
- 24 *gaf*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *geven* 'to give'
- water*: acc. nt. sg. of *water* 'water'
- ghinc dwaen*: 'went to wash himself'
- 25 *dwale*: acc. f. sg. of *dwale* 'towel'
- 26 *droghen soude*: 'should dry himself'
- 27 *hadde*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *hebben* 'to have' *dat*: rel. pron. 'which'
 (antecedent is *al*)
- hebben woude*: 'wanted to have'

13.2. The Germanic languages

The Germanic languages are the branch of the Indo-European language family to which the earlier and the modern forms of Dutch belong. Besides Dutch, German, and English, there are several other languages, some extinct and several still actively used, which are also part of the Germanic branch. All of these languages are derived from the same parent language, Germanic. No written records of the parent language exist, hence much of its structure can only be deduced by comparison of its daughter languages. Traditionally, the Germanic languages have been subdivided into East, North, and West Germanic.

The earliest literary monument available in a Germanic language is the Arian bishop Wulfila's Bible translation from Greek into Gothic. This translation is part of the *Codex Argenteus* [Silver Bible] and has been dated at circa 385 A.D. Together with Rugian, Burgundian, and Vandalic, of which our knowledge is very limited, Gothic belongs to the East Germanic language group. All of these languages are extinct today. Our most recent source of East Germanic is from the hand of the Flemish diplomat Ogier Ghislain de Busbecq. At some time between 1555 and 1562, he met with two envoys from the Crimea, where a variant of Gothic was spoken and he transcribed some of their words (in Gothic) along with Latin glosses. Although this language continued to be spoken until the eighteenth century, this remains the only written documentation.

The oldest representatives of the West Germanic branch are Old English, Old Frisian, Old Saxon, Old Dutch (Old Low Franconian), and Old High German. Disregarding some earlier runic inscriptions, the oldest writings in the English language are from the eighth century A.D. The Middle English period started around 1100 and lasted approximately four hundred years. The beginnings of Modern English date from the early sixteenth century.

Frisian is mainly spoken in the coastal areas of the North Sea. Records in Old Frisian are available from approximately 1275. Over the centuries, much of the area where Frisian was originally spoken gradually was taken over by German and Dutch dialects.

Our knowledge of Old Saxon is derived mainly from a lengthy poem called *Der Heliand* [The Savior], which was composed circa 800 A.D. Old Saxon is the ancestor of Middle Low German (circa 1100-1500), which acquired official status as a written language at the time of the Hanseatic League, and *Plattdeutsch* (circa 1500-present), which survived on a regional basis as a spoken dialect in northern Germany.

The term Old High German is used to designate the Bavarian, Alemannic, and Midland Franconian dialects prior to circa 1100 A.D. The oldest extant records in Old High German are from circa 700 A.D., although earlier runic inscriptions are available. The Middle High German period lasted approximately four centuries. During the sixteenth century, New High German gradually emerged.

Two other languages that belong to the West Germanic branch are Afrikaans and Yiddish. Afrikaans is based on the dialect of the province of South Holland. Any person who knows Dutch can read and understand Afrikaans with little difficulty. Yiddish includes many elements from Romance, Hebrew-Aramaic and Slavic languages. The earliest extensive manuscript in a Yiddish dialect is from 1382 and is known as the *Cambridge Yiddish Codex*.

North Germanic includes the earlier and present forms of Danish, Faeroese, Icelandic, Norwegian, and Swedish, i.e. the Scandinavian languages. Many early runic inscriptions in North Germanic dating from 200 to 600 A.D. are still extant. The first lengthier writings in North Germanic dialects stem from the late twelfth century and the beginning of the thirteenth century. The early Scandinavian language that is studied most frequently today is Old Icelandic (Old Norse), in spite of the fact that its written literature started as late as the twelfth century. Old Icelandic developed a strong literary tradition during the Middle Ages. Since Old Icelandic is also the most conservative dialect of the North Germanic languages, it is of particular interest to historical linguists.

The division of the Germanic language branch into East, West, and North Germanic is frequently used, and for that reason it has been introduced in this book. However, it has also been a matter of controversy, and there is no agreement yet over the validity of this division.

All Germanic languages share certain characteristics that are unique to them, i.e. that do not occur in the other Indo-European language groups. These characteristics are part of the individual development of the dialects of the Germanic tribes, whose language contained chiefly Indo-European elements, which were modified over time. Some innovations typical of Germanic are the position of primary word stress on the initial syllable, the development of weak and strong verbs, and a consonant shift (Grimm's Law and Verner's Law).

13.3. Irregular weak verbs

A stem change occurs in the preterit tense and in the past participles of a limited number of weak verbs. These verbs fall into two categories: a group that always undergoes a stem change, and a group that may or may not change the stem vowel. Irregular weak verbs take the same person/number endings as the weak verbs, and their past participles end in a dental stop.

(i) Verbs with an obligatory stem change are listed in Table 27:

Table 27. Irregular weak verbs with obligatory stem change

infinitive	ind. pret. 1st sg.	past participle
<i>brenghen</i> 'to bring'	<i>brachte, brochte</i>	<i>bracht, brocht</i>
<i>denken</i> 'to think'	<i>dachte, dochte</i>	<i>ghedacht</i>
<i>dunken</i> 'to seem'	<i>dochte</i>	<i>ghedocht</i>
<i>hebben</i> 'to have'	<i>hadde</i>	<i>ghehad, ghat, ghehebt</i>
<i>cnopen</i> 'to tie, knot'	<i>cnochte</i>	<i>ghecnocht</i>
<i>copen</i> 'to buy'	<i>cochte, cofte</i>	<i>ghecocht</i>
<i>raken</i> 'to hit, touch'	<i>rochte</i>	<i>gherocht</i>
<i>roeken</i> 'to care about'	<i>rochte</i>	<i>gherocht</i>
<i>soeken</i> 'to seek'	<i>sochte</i>	<i>ghesocht</i>
<i>werken</i> 'to work'	<i>wrachte, wrochte</i>	<i>ghewracht, ghewrocht</i>

The past participle of *brenghen* 'to bring' does not take the prefix *ghe*, i.e. *bracht*.

(ii) Verbs with an optional stem change are listed in Table 28:

Table 28. Irregular weak verbs with an optional stem change

infinitive	ind. pret. 1st sg.	past participle
<i>bernen</i> 'to burn'	<i>brande, bernde</i>	<i>ghebrant, ghebernt</i>
<i>kennen</i> 'to know'	<i>kande, kende</i>	<i>ghecant, ghekent</i>
<i>prenden</i> 'to rob'	<i>prande, prende</i>	<i>gheprant, gheprent</i>
<i>rennen</i> 'to run'	<i>rande, rende</i>	<i>gherant, gherent</i>
<i>schenden</i> 'to damage'	<i>schande, schende</i>	<i>gheschant, gheschent</i>
<i>senden</i> 'to send'	<i>sande, sende</i>	<i>ghesant, ghesent</i>

In the preterit tense and in the past participle of *bernen* 'to burn', the order in which *r* and the stem vowel *e* occur has been reversed: This phenomenon is called *r*-metathesis. The term denotes the transposition of a vowel and *r* within one word. In Middle Dutch, *r*-metathesis could occur whenever there was a sequence of *r* + short vowel + a dental tautosyllabic consonant, provided the sequence does not occur in initial position, e.g. *derde* 'third' (cf. MDu. *drie* 'three'), *vorst* 'frost' (cf. Eng. *frost*).

Chapter 14

Ferguut (I)

14.1. Reading and textual analysis: *Ferguut*

The Middle Dutch *Ferguut*, dated to the second half of the thirteenth century, is another example of a British or Arthurian romance. Unlike *Walewein*, which is probably an original Dutch work, *Ferguut* is an adaptation of a French poem: Guillaume le Clerc's *Fergus* (circa 1225), which itself was written in imitation of Chrétien de Troyes's *Perceval* (circa 1180). The Middle Dutch adaptation of *Fergus* was probably the work of a thirteenth-century Flemish poet, although more about the author is unknown. At times the poem's language differs from the usually elevated style of the courtly epics, in that some passages are expressed in a rather coarse style. Moreover, reality often prevails over fantasy, which gives this epic an undertone critical of its own genre. (For example, the fact that a commoner manages to become a knight of repute is quite unusual.)

Ferguut, the son of a wealthy commoner and a woman of noble descent, wants to be a knight at King Arthur's court. However, having been raised in a sheltered environment, he has little knowledge of the customs and the world of courtly knighthood. The romance is an account of *Ferguut*'s transformation from an ignorant commoner into a knight worthy of King Arthur's court. *Ferguut*'s apprenticeship is not easy, and along the way he is called upon to slay giants, to rescue a damsel in distress and to obtain a precious shield made of white ivory.

In the following passage, *Ferguut* is preparing to leave home, gathering together what he presumes is necessary to make his entry into the unknown world, the realm of knights and their damsels.

- 1 *Die dorpre en wilde nemmer beiden.*
 In die zale dede hi spreiden
 Een utermaten swarte cleet.
 Die wapine warp hire up ghereet.
5 *Een witte bronie daer mede was.*
 Die knape dedese an, ende na das
 Twee cousen ende den halsberch groet
 Wel dapperlike hine ane scoet.
 Den helm so leiste hi wel schiere.

- 10 *Een swert gordi, ende een ors diere*
Brochtemen vor den jongelinc.
Ic wane grave no coninc
Noit beter met ogen sagen
Om enen ridder gewapint te dragen
15 *Ofte twee, alst was te doene.*
Het was dapper ende coene.
Daer jegen hem cume een vogel hilde
Te vliegene, daert lopen wilde.
Die knape gaf enen lach
20 *Daer hi den wrene comen sach.*
Hi grepene; int ghereide hi spranc.
Den stegereep wistijs cleinen danc.
Ene scorgie nam hi in sine hant.
Men wiste van sporen niet int lant.
25 *Die scorgie was ten inde geknocht.*
Enen ouden scilt heftmen hem brocht
Ende enen spere, die in den roec
Gehangen hadde seven jaer ende oec
Doe vragedi omme sijn gavelot.
30 *Ghi moget wel weten, hi was sot.*
Men brocht hem vollec, hi hiet langen.
Ane sijn aertsoen heft hijt gehangen.

- 1 *dorpre:* nom. m. sg. 'villain'
wilde: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *willen* 'to want, wish'
nemmer: adv. 'never, never again'
beiden: inf. 'to wait'
2 *dede ... spreiden:* 'had (someone) spread'
3 *swarte:* adj. *swart* 'black'
4 *wapine:* acc. nt./f. pl. of *wapin* 'weapon, arm'
warp: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *werpen* 'to throw'
hire up = hi + re up
ghereet: adv. 'at once, directly'
5 *witte:* adj. *wit, witte* 'white'
bronie: nom. f. sg. 'breastplate, cuirass'
6 *knape:* nom. m. sg. 'boy, fellow'
dedese an: *dede + se an; dede ... an:* ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *andoen* 'to put on'; *se:* cl. pron. 'them'
7 *twee:* num. 'two'
halsberch: acc. m. sg. of *halsberch* 'hauberk, coat of mail'
8 *dapperliken:* adv. 'quickly'
hine = hi + ne
ane scoet: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *ane scieten* 'to slip on'

- 9 *helm*: acc. m. sg. of *helm* 'helmet'
letste: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *letsen* 'to tie, knot'
schiere: adv. 'quickly, at once'
- 10 *swert*: acc. nt. sg. of *swert* 'sword'
gordi: *gorde* + *i*; *gorde*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *gorden* 'to gird'; *i*:
 cl. pron. 'he'
ors: acc. nt. sg. of *ors* 'horse'
- 11 *jongelinc*: acc. m. sg. of *jongelinc* 'youth, adolescent'
- 13 *beter*: 'better'
sagen: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of *sien* 'to see'
- 14 *om enen ridder gewapint te dragen*: 'to carry an armed knight'
- 15 *ofte*: conj. 'or'
alst was te doene: 'if that were possible'
- 16 *dapper*: adj. *dapper* 'swift, fast'
coene: adj. *coene* 'courageous, valiant'
- 17-18 *Daer jegen hem cume een vogel hilde te vliegene, daert lopen
 wilde.*: 'A flying bird could hardly travel as quickly.'
- 19 *gaf enen lach*: 'burst into laughter'
- 20 *daer*: conj. 'when'
wrene: acc. m. sg. of *wrene* 'stallion, horse'
comen sach: 'saw ... arriving'
- 21 *grepene*: *greep* + *ene*; *greep*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *gripen* 'to seize,
 catch'; *ene*: cl. pron. 'him, it'
ghereide: acc. nt. sg. of *ghereide* 'saddle'
spranc: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *springhen* 'to jump'
- 22 *den stegereep wistijs cleinen danc*: 'He made no use of the stirrup'
- 23 *scorgie*: acc. f. sg. of *scorgie* 'whip'
nam: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *nemen* 'to take'
- 24 *wiste*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *weten* 'to know'
sporen: dat. f./m. pl. of *spore*, *spoor* 'spur'
lant: acc. nt. sg. of *lant* 'land, country'
- 25 *was ... geknocht*: 'was knotted'
inde: 'India'
- 26 *ouden*: adj. *out* 'old'
scilt: acc. m. sg. of *scilt* 'shield'
heftmen ... brocht: *heft* + *men ... brocht*; 'one has brought'; *heft*:
 auxiliary verb in the ind. pres.; *brocht*: pp. of *brenghen* 'to bring';
men: pron. 'one'
- 27 *spere*: acc. m. sg. of *spere* 'spear'
die: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *enen spere*)
roec: dat. f. sg. of *roec* 'haystack'
- 28 *gehangen hadde*: 'had hung'; *gehangen*: pp. of *hangen* 'to hang';
hadde: auxiliary verb in the ind. pret.
seven jaer: 'for seven years'

- 29 *vragedi*: *vragede* + *i*: *vragede*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *vragen* 'to ask';
i: cl. pron. 'he'
omme: prep. 'for'
gavelot: acc. nt. sg. of *gavelot* 'javelin, dart'
- 30 *moget*: *moget* + *et*; *moget*: ind. 2nd pl. pres. of *mogen* 'to be
able, may'; *et*: cl. pron. 'it'
weten: inf. 'to know'
sot: adj. *sot* 'foolish, silly'
- 31 *vollec*: adv. 'immediately'
hiet: *hiet* + *et*; *hiet*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *heten* 'to order'; *et*: cl.
pron. 'it'
langen: inf. 'to give, hand'
- 32 *ane*: prep. 'on'
aertsoen: acc. nt. sg. of *aertsoen* 'saddlebow, saddletree'
heft ... *gehangen*: 'has hung'; *heft*: auxiliary verb in the ind.
pres.; *gehangen*: pp. of *hangen* 'to hang'

14.2. The Germanic consonant shift

One of the chief characteristics that distinguishes the Germanic languages from other Indo-European language branches is a series of related consonant changes. The Dane Rasmus Rask (1787-1832) first observed and described these sound shifts. Four years later, Jacob Grimm (1785-1863) expanded the material and made one correction to it, which accounts for it being called "Grimm's Law" today. Grimm's Law states that:

(i) The Indo-European voiceless stops (**p*, **t*, **k*) correspond to voiceless fricatives in Germanic (**f*, **þ*, **X*), e.g.

IE **p* Lat. *pedis* 'foot' > Gmc. **f*; MDu. *voet* 'foot' (cf. Eng. *foot*)

IE **t* Lat. *tres* 'three' > Gmc. **þ*; MDu. *drie* 'three' (cf. Eng. *three*)

IE **k* Lat. *cornu* 'horn' > Gmc. **X*; MDu. *horen* 'horn' (cf. Eng. *horn*)

Note that IE **p*, **t*, and **k* remained unshifted when they followed a fricative. Such a fricative might already have been present in the parent language, e.g. MDu. *ster* 'star' and Lat. *stella* 'star' both retained the original sequence IE **st*. The fricative could also have its origin in the Germanic consonant shift, e.g. Lat. *octo* 'eight', but MDu. *acht* 'eight', where IE **t* remained Gmc. **t* following shifted Gmc. **X*).

(ii) The Indo-European voiced aspirated stops (**bh*, **dh*, **gh*) correspond to voiced fricatives in Proto-Germanic (**b*, **d*, **g*). Depending on the environment, they emerge as voiced fricatives or voiced stops in the Germanic languages, e.g.

IE **bh* San. *bhárâmi* 'to carry' > Gmc. **b*; MDu. *baren* 'to give birth to' (cf. Eng. *to bear*)

IE **dh* San. *mádhyas* 'middle' > Gmc. **d*; MDu. *midden* 'middle' (cf. Eng. *middle*)

IE **gh* IE **ghóstis* 'guest' > Gmc. **g*; MDu. *gast* 'guest' (cf. Eng. *guest*)

Note that IE **bh*, **dh*, and **gh* remained intact only in Sanskrit.

(iii) The Indo-European voiced stops (**b*, **d*, **g*) correspond to voiceless stops in Germanic (**p*, **t*, **k*), e.g.

IE **b* Lat. *turba* 'crowd' > Gmc. **p* MDu. *dorp* 'village' (cf. OE *þorpe* 'village') (Examples of IE **b* are few.)

IE **d* Lat. *decem* 'ten' > Gmc. **t* MDu. *tien* 'ten' (cf. Eng. *ten*)

IE **g* Lat. *genu* 'knee' > Gmc. **k* MDu. *knie* 'knee' (cf. Eng. *knee*)

The consonant shifts as described above did not take place simultaneously. The shift from Indo-European voiceless stops to Germanic voiceless fricatives happened prior to the shift from Indo-European voiced aspirated stops to voiced stops. The shifting of the Indo-European voiceless stops to Germanic voiced fricatives is generally considered parallel to the shift of their voiceless counterparts. The consonant shifts probably began some time in the first millennium B.C. and was completed several centuries later.

Grimm's Law provided an explanation for most systematic consonant changes from Indo-European to Germanic, yet it failed to account for apparent "irregularities". In some words, IE **p*, **t*, **k* in medial position had become Gmc. **f*, **þ*, **X* just as predicted by Grimm's Law, whereas in others, the corresponding voiced fricatives appeared, e.g. Lat. *pater* 'father', Got. *fadar* 'father' (where *d* represents a voiced fricative), but Lat. *frater* 'brother', Goth. *broþar* 'brother' (*þ* represents a voiceless fricative). The Dane Karl Verner (1846-1896) discovered that the shifted Germanic fricatives **f*, **þ*, **X* and **s* were voiced in medial and final position, provided the primary word stress did not immediately precede them. This phenomenon is known as "Verner's Law". Subsequent to the Germanic consonant shift, the stress pattern of Germanic changed, as the primary stress was fixed on the first syllable in Germanic. Hence, the Gmc. word for "father" originally bore stress on the second part, whereas the Gmc. word for "brother" was originally stressed on the first syllable.

14.3. Introduction to the indicative preterit tense and past participles of strong verbs

Typical of the verbal system of the Germanic language family is the distinction between two major groups of verbs: strong and weak verbs. Chapter 12 introduced the formation of the preterit tense of weak verbs by means of the affix *(e)d*. Strong verbs do not use any affix to form the preterit tense, relying instead on alternations of the stem vowel. Thus, for strong verbs, the stem vowel of the present tense is different from the stem vowel of the preterit tense. This phenomenon also exists in English, where the preterit tenses of verbs such as "to drink" and "to write" are "drank" and "wrote". Whereas these verbs are sometimes considered "irregular" in English grammars, they behave in a regular manner in older Germanic dialects: large numbers of verbs show vowel alternations in their stem, and certain features of the present tense stem make it possible to predict the other forms of a given strong verb.

It is common practice in grammars of older Germanic languages to list four basic stems or principal parts for each strong verb. There are four principal parts, since a maximum of four different vowels can alternate in the stems of strong verbs:

- (i) The first principal part is the present stem. It is also the stem of the infinitive, the imperative, and the subjunctive I (See 21.3).
- (ii) The second principal part is the stem for the first and third persons singular of the indicative preterit.
- (iii) The third principal part serves as the stem for the indicative preterit of the second person singular, and of all persons in the plural. In addition, it is also the stem used for the subjunctive II (See 21.3).
- (iv) the fourth principal part is the past participle stem.

For example, the strong verb *werpen* 'to throw' has the following preterit forms: *ic warp* 'I threw' and *wi worpen* 'we threw'. Thus *e* (from *werpen*) is the stem vowel of the first principal part. *a* is found in the second principal part, and *o* characterizes the third principal part. The past participle, *gheworpen* 'thrown', is the fourth principal part.

In the earliest stages of the common Germanic language, the two first principal parts bore primary stress on the stem, while the stem of the third and fourth principal parts were weakly stressed. As a result, stems of strong verbs with shifted IE consonants display the effects of Verner's Law (i.e. voiceless fricatives in the first and second principal parts, but voiced fricatives

in the third and fourth principal parts). The alternation of voiced and voiceless consonants in the stems of strong verbs is called "grammatical change". Remnants of grammatical change may also be noticed in English, e.g. *was* vs. *were* ($r < z$). In Middle Dutch, one finds the alternations $s : r$, as in *kiesen* 'to choose' - *koos* - *koren* - *ghecoren* ($r < z$), and - (zero) : s , as in *tien* 'to draw, pull' - *tooch* - *toghen* - *ghetoghen*. In this book, strong verbs whose stems were affected by grammatical change are listed explicitly.

Table 29 lists the person/number endings of strong verbs for the indicative preterit tense. They are affixed to the second and third principal part of a strong verb: (Vowels between parentheses are frequently syncopated.)

Table 29. The person/number endings for strong verbs in the indicative preterit tense

	singular	plural
first person	- (no ending)	<i>en</i>
second person	(<i>e</i>) <i>s</i>	(<i>e</i>) <i>d</i>
third person	- (no ending)	<i>en</i>

In the second person singular, one also finds (*e*)*st*, (*e*)*ste*, etc.

As an example, the conjugation pattern of *werpen* 'to throw' in the preterit tense is indicated in Table 30:

Table 30. *werpen* 'to throw': indicative preterit tense

singular	plural
<i>ic warp</i>	<i>wi worpen</i>
<i>du worpes, worps</i>	<i>ghi worpet, worpt</i>
<i>hi, si, het warp</i>	<i>si worpen</i>

The past participle of a strong verb always uses the stem vowel of the fourth principal part. A past participle may take the prefix *ghe*, which appears under the same circumstances as weak verbs. It always ends in the suffix *en*, e.g. *gevonden* 'found', *gheworpen* 'thrown', *verloren* 'lost'.

There are seven strong verb classes in Middle Dutch (and in the other older Germanic languages), which will be introduced in this and the following two

chapters. In this chapter, we will present the verb classes I - III. In the next chapter, classes IV - VI are treated. Chapter 16 provides an introduction to class VII. In the examples listed, the ind. pres. 1st sg. pres. exemplifies the first principal part. The second principal part is represented by the ind. pret. 1st sg. The third principal part is represented by the ind. pret. 1st pl. Finally, the past participle is listed, showing the vowel of the fourth principal part.

14.4. Indicative preterit and past participles of strong verbs: Classes I - III

Class I includes verbs with stem vowel *ī* in the infinitive.

Class II includes verbs with stem vowel (a) *ie* or (b) *ū* in the infinitive.

Class III includes (a) verbs with stem vowel *e*, followed by *l* or *r* and another consonant in the infinitive and (b) verbs with stem vowel *i*, followed by a nasal and another consonant in the infinitive.

14.4.1. Class I: *ī* - *ē* - *ē* - *ē*

Table 31 indicates the vowel gradation pattern of strong verbs belonging to Class I:

Table 31. Class I strong verbs: vowel gradation pattern

infinitive	1st sg. pret.	1st pl. pret.	past participle
<i>biten</i> 'to bite'	<i>beet</i>	<i>beten</i>	<i>ghebeten</i>
<i>verdwinen</i> 'to disappear'	<i>verdween</i>	<i>verdwenen</i>	<i>verdwenen</i>
<i>scinen</i> 'to seem, shine'	<i>sceen</i>	<i>scenen</i>	<i>ghescenen</i>

The following verbs require special attention:

1. Grammatical change is evident in the following verbs: *tiēn* 'to accuse' - *teech* - *teghen* - *gheteghen*; and *diēn* 'to thrive' (like *tiēn*);
2. Two common verbs belonging to the first class do not have the prefix *ghe* in their past participle: *bliven* 'to remain, stay': pp. *bleven*; *liden* 'to go, pass': pp. *leden*;

14.4.2. Class II

14.4.2.1. Class IIa: *ie - ē - ȳ - ȳ*

Table 32 indicates the vowel gradation pattern of strong verbs belonging to Class IIa:

Table 32. Class IIa strong verbs: vowel gradation pattern

infinitive	1st sg. pret.	1st pl. pret.	past participle
<i>ghieten</i> 'to pour'	<i>ghoot</i>	<i>ghoten</i>	<i>gheghoten</i>
<i>ghenieten</i> 'to enjoy'	<i>ghenoot</i>	<i>ghenoten</i>	<i>ghenoten</i>
<i>lieghen</i> 'to lie'	<i>looch</i>	<i>loghen</i>	<i>gheloghen</i>

14.4.2.2. Class IIb: *ū - ȳ - ȳ - ȳ*

Table 33 indicates the vowel gradation pattern of strong verbs belonging to Class IIb:

Table 33. Class IIb strong verbs: vowel gradation pattern

infinitive	1st sg. pret.	1st pl. pret.	past participle
<i>bughen</i> 'to bend'	<i>booch</i>	<i>boghen</i>	<i>gheboghen</i>
<i>sluten</i> 'to close'	<i>sloot</i>	<i>sloten</i>	<i>ghesloten</i>
<i>crupen</i> 'to crawl'	<i>croop</i>	<i>copen</i>	<i>ghecropen</i>

Grammatical change occurs in: *kiesen* 'to choose' *coos* - *coren* - *ghecoren* (*r < z*), *verliesen* 'to loose', *vriesen* 'to freeze' (like *kiesen*); and *tien* 'to draw, pull' - *tooch* - *toghen* - *ghetoghen*.

14.4.3. Class III

14.4.3.1 Class IIIa: *e - a - o - o*

Table 34 indicates the vowel gradation pattern of strong verbs belonging to Class IIIa:

Table 34. Class IIIa strong verbs: vowel gradation pattern

infinitive	1st sg. pret.	1st pl. pret.	past participle
<i>werpen</i> 'to throw'	<i>warp</i>	<i>worpen</i>	<i>gheworpen</i>
<i>helpen</i> 'to help'	<i>halp</i>	<i>holpen</i>	<i>gheholpen</i>
<i>werden</i> 'to become'	<i>wart</i>	<i>worden</i>	<i>gheworden</i>

The past participle of *vinden* 'to find' does not have the prefix *ghe*: *vonden*.

14.4.3.2. Class IIIb: *i - a - o - o*

Table 35 indicates the vowel gradation pattern of strong verbs belonging to Class IIIb:

Table 35. Class IIIb strong verbs: vowel gradation pattern

infinitive	1st sg. pret.	1st pl. pret.	past participle
<i>binden</i> 'to bind'	<i>bant</i>	<i>bonden</i>	<i>ghebonden</i>
<i>springhen</i> 'to jump'	<i>spranc</i>	<i>spronghen</i>	<i>ghespronghen</i>
<i>drinken</i> 'to drink'	<i>drank</i>	<i>dronken</i>	<i>ghedronken</i>

The following verbs require special attention:

1. For the verb *beghinnen* 'to begin', several forms are attested. Besides *began*, *begannen*, one also finds irregular sg. *begonde*, *begonste* and pl. *begonden*, *begonsten*.
2. In younger documents, *helpen* 'to help' and *werpen* 'to throw' may have *ie* in their pret. stems, e.g. *hi wierp*, *si wierpen*.

3. A variant form of the infinitive *werden* is *worden*, which occurs in younger texts. The pret. may be regular, i.e. *wart*, *worden* or irregular *wert*, *werden*.
4. *ghelden* 'to pay' and *scelden* 'to call names' may have second, third and fourth principal parts with *oud*, e.g. *scout*, *scouden*, *ghescouden*. *smelten* 'to melt' has *smalt*, *smouten* and *smolten*, *ghesmouten* and *ghesmolten* (See 1.13).
5. *vechten* 'to fight' and *vlechten* 'to braid' also follow the pattern of class IIIb verbs.

Chapter 15

Dirc Potter

15.1. Reading and textual analysis: Dirc Potter

All the works that have been introduced so far were written by southern authors. This chapter concentrates on the work of one of the best-known fourteenth-century poets from Holland, Dirc Potter (circa 1370-1428). Dirc Potter was employed in the service of the Counts of Holland and as a bailiff in The Hague. In 1411-1412 he spent several months in Rome, where he was entrusted with a secret mission. His stay in Italy, however, remained without significance for his writing: Potter had no eyes for the flourishing Renaissance in Italy and instead claimed to be bored and disgusted by the Italians' decadence and immorality. During his sojourn in Italy, Potter conceived plans for his first work: *Der Minnen Loep* [The Course of Love]. Bored and homesick, the narrator goes for a walk, when suddenly Venus appears to him, urging him to write a didactic poem with the purpose of educating people about love.

Potter's work is divided into four books, each dealing with a different kind of love. Book I describes "foolish love", which is passionate and irrational. "Good love" or "courtly love" is the subject matter of Book II. The next book contains only a very concise description and few examples of "illicit love", since the author does not want to stimulate the readers' imagination in that direction. Finally, Book IV culminates in the rendition of "lawful love", the only morally correct expression of love. *Der Minnen Loep* contains approximately sixty love stories, mainly drawn from Ovid's *Heroides* or *Metamorphoses* and from the Bible. Potter also wrote two other works in prose, *Blome der Doecheden* [Flowers of Virtue] and *Mellibeus*.

The following excerpt is taken from Book I of *Der Minnen Loep*. In a distant country the handsome Calistomus hears about the wealthy and beautiful princess Orfennes and falls in love with her, sight unseen. He confesses his love to her in a letter, which his messenger delivers. Orfennes, who meanwhile has a secret lover, Odolyas, answers the letter, feigning her love for Calistomus at Odolyas's urging. The delighted Calistomus sets out to meet the princess but encounters a dreadful fate. In a romantic meeting

with Orfennes, Odolyas murders both him and his servant. This passage relates the arrival of the messenger at the palace, and Orfennes's reaction upon receiving the letter.

- 1 *Die knecht die heeft him wech ghestolen*
Wijsliken, mit snelre list,
Datter nyemant off en wist.
Over tmeer is hi ghecomen
5 *Dair hi die vrouwe heeft vernomen*
Gaen spaetseren inden graze,
Allene buten den pallase.
Doe sine sach, ghinc sy him teghen.
Oetmoedelic is hi gheneghen
10 *Voerder vrouwen op sinen knyen*
Ende gaff hoir den brieff mittien,
Dien sy las ende ghinc van daen,
Ende dede Odolyas verstaen,
Datter een bode waer ghecomen
15 *Van Calistomus den vromen.*
Odolyas te hant daer quam,
Listeliken, datmens niet en vernam.
Heymelic was hij daer ende stille.
Die brieve besach hij tsinen wille,
20 *Die Chalistomus hadde ghescreven.*
Odolias heeft so bedreven,
Dat die vrouwe hem weder ontboot,
Des sy en meynde cleyn noch groot,
Dan omden gueden te verderven
25 *Ende hoirs vriendes wille te werven.*
Si ontboot him dat hi quame
Ende enen dienre mit him name,
Sonder meer, ende heymelic.
Stede ende stonde dier ghelijc
30 *Heeft si him bescheiden wael,*
Ende al mit schoonre loser tael.

- 1 *knecht*: nom. m. sg. 'male servant'
heeft him ghestolen: 'has stolen away'; *heeft*: auxiliary verb in
the ind. pres.; *him ghestolen*: pp. of *stelen* (refl.) 'to steal away'
2 *wijsliken*: adv. 'in a clever way, wisely'
snelre: adj. *snel* 'quick, swift'
3 *datter ... off* = *dat* + *er off*
wist: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *weten* 'to know'
4 *over*: prep. 'over, across'

- tmeer*: *t* + *meer*; *t*: cl. art. 'the'; *meer*: acc. nt. sg. 'lake, sea'
is ... ghecomen: 'has come'; *is*: auxiliary verb in the ind. pres.;
ghecomen: pp. of *comen* 'to come'
5 *dair* = *daer*
heeft vernomen: 'has noticed'; *heeft*: auxiliary verb in the ind. pres.; *vernomen*: pp. of *vernemen* 'to see, notice'
6 *gaen spaetseren*: 'who had gone for a walk'
graze: dat. nt. sg. of *gras* 'grass'
7 *allene*: adj. 'alone'
buten: prep. 'outside'
pallase: dat. nt./m. sg. of *pallas* 'palace'
8 *ghinc ... teghen*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *teghengaen* 'to go over to greet'
9 *oetmoedelic*: adv. 'humbly, meekly'
is ... gheneghen: 'has bowed'; *is*: auxiliary verb in the ind. pres.;
gheneghen: pp. of *nighen* 'to bow'
10 *voerder* = *voer* + *der*
knyen: dat. nt./f. pl. of *knye* 'knee'
11 *gaff*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *geven* 'to give'
hoir = *haer*
brieff: acc. m. sg. of *brieff* 'letter'
mittien: adv. 'at the same time, immediately'
12 *dien*: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *den brieff*)
las: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *lesen* 'to read'
ghinc: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *gaen* 'to go'
van daen: adv. 'away from there'
13 *dede ... verstaen*: 'had (someone) understand'
14 *datter* = *dat* + *er*
bode: nom. m. sg. 'messenger'
waer ghecomen: 'had come'; *waer*: auxiliary verb in the subj. II;
ghecomen: pp. of *comen* 'to come'
15 *vromen*: adj. *vrome*, *vroom* 'vigorous, pious'
17 *listeliken*: adv. 'cleverly, skillfully'
datmens = *dat* + *men* + *es*
vernam: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *vernemen* (+ gen.) 'to notice, see'
18 *heymelic*: adv. 'secretly'
stille: adv. 'secretly, in private'
19 *besach*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *besien* 'to see, look at'
20 *die*: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *die brieve*)
hadde ghescreven: 'had written'; *hadde*: auxiliary verb in the ind. pret.; *ghescreven*: pp. of *scriven* 'to write'
21 *heeft ... bedreven*: 'has arranged'; *heeft*: auxiliary verb in the ind. pres.; *bedreven*: pp. of *bedriven* 'to arrange'
22 *weder*: adv. 'again'

- 23 *ontboot*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *ontbieden* 'to send for, summon'
 24 *meynde*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *meynen* (+ gen.) 'to mean, intend'
dan: conj. 'except, but'
om ... te verderven: 'in order to ruin'
wille: acc. m./f. sg. of *wille* 'desire, acceptance'
gueden = *goeden*
 25 *(om) ... te werven*: 'in order to obtain ...'
 26 *quame*: subj. II, 3rd sg. of *comen* 'to come'
 27 *dienre*: acc. m. sg. of *dienre* 'servant'
name: subj. II, 3rd sg. of *nemen* 'to take'
 28 *sonder meer*: 'simply, without much ado'
 29 *stede*: acc. f./m. sg. of *stede* 'place, location'
stonde: acc. f./m. sg. of *stonde* 'time, term'
dier ghelijc: adv. 'also, too'
 30 *heeft bescheiden*: 'has explained'; *heeft*: auxiliary verb in the ind.
 pres.; *bescheiden*: pp. of *bescheiden* 'to explain, clear up'
wael = *wel*
 31 *schoonre*: adj. *schone*, *schoon* 'beautiful'
loser: adj. *loos* 'specious, sly'
tael: dat. f. sg. of *tael* 'language, argument'

15.2. The Franks, the Frisians, and the Saxons

When studying the history of the Dutch language, one is actually concentrating on the development of the language of three ancient Germanic tribes that settled in the area where Dutch is now spoken: the Franks, the Saxons, and the Frisians.

The first historical allusion to the Franks dates back to the year 256 A.D., when they had crossed the *limes*, i.e. the Roman fortified defense works, and settled - with Roman consent - within the Roman empire. The origins of the Franks are obscure. The term is used to refer to various heterogeneous and ancient tribes, including the Chamavi, the Bructeri, the Chatti (Hessians), the Chattuarii, the Salians, and the Ripuarians, as they are identified in the works of classical authors. These tribes acted independently in times of peace, but shared the same language and similar laws. Since they lived in close contact with the Romans, they were strongly influenced by the Gallo-Roman culture. Some Franks even served as auxiliary troops in the Roman armies, or worked on Roman estates.

Traditionally, the Franks are divided into two large groups based on their geographical distribution at the beginning of the fifth century: (a) the Northern (Salian) Franks, who lived between the Meuse and Schelde, and (b)

the Eastern (Riparian) Franks, who settled along the banks of the Rhine and in the area between the Meuse and the Rhine.

The first Franks to replace the Roman administration over most of Gaul were the Merovingians, a dynasty named after the semi-legendary chief Merovech, who was a Salian Frank. His grandson Clovis (466-511) managed to unite all the Frankish tribes under his leadership. Clovis's conversion to Christianity marked the beginning of the Christianization of the Franks. When Clovis died, the kingdom was divided among his four sons and remained divided most of the time during the next one hundred and ten years. Dagobert I was the last Merovingian king of consequence. After his death in 639, the Merovingian dynasty fell into decline and many magnate families ruled *de facto*. One of these families, the Riparian Carolingians, established their own dynasty in 751.

The annexation of the Frisian territories as far North as the Lauwers to the kingdom of the Franks was the work of the Carolingian Charles Martel (died 741). The Frisians were a heathen people, linguistically related to the Franks. They had inhabited coastal regions between the Schelde and the Ems rivers since the first century A.D. and had become a great maritime power, navigating to England, Scandinavia, and beyond. The conversion of the Frisians to Christianity was undertaken by the Englishmen Willibrord (658-739) and Saint Boniface (680-754).

The lands of the Saxons and the Eastern Frisians were incorporated into the Frankish kingdom under Charlemagne's rule (768-814). The Saxons presumably derived their name from a short curved sword, the *scramasax*. They were not a linguistic and ethnic unit, and hence the term "Saxons" refers to several tribes. Some of these tribes crossed the Channel and settled in the British Isles during the fifth century, while others remained on the Continent and expanded their territories. Those who remained on the mainland were unable to defend themselves against Charlemagne's numerous wars from 772 to 804 A.D. and finally their lands became part of Charlemagne's Empire. The Christianization of the Saxons, which started at that time, met with heavy resistance from the heathen population.

15.3. Indicative preterit and past participles of strong verbs: Classes IV - VI

Class IV includes verbs with the stem vowel \bar{e} followed by *m*, *n*, *l*, or *r*.

Class V includes verbs with the stem vowel \bar{e} followed by one consonant except *m*, *n*, *l*, or *r*.

Class VI includes verbs with the stem vowel \bar{a} followed by one consonant.

15.3.1. Class IV: \bar{e} - *a* - \bar{a} - \bar{o}

Table 36 indicates the vowel gradation pattern of strong verbs belonging to Class IV:

Table 36. Class IV strong verbs: vowel gradation pattern

infinitive	1st sg. pret.	1st pl. pret.	past participle
<i>stelen</i> 'to steal'	<i>stal</i>	<i>stalen</i>	<i>ghestolen</i>
<i>vernemen</i> 'to notice'	<i>vernam</i>	<i>vernamen</i>	<i>vernomen</i>
<i>bevelen</i> 'to order'	<i>beval</i>	<i>bevalen</i>	<i>bevolen</i>

The following verbs require special attention:

1. From an historical point of view, *sceren* 'to cut' and *sweren* 'to hurt' belong to class IV, although they use different stem vowels in the pret.: *scoor*, *scoer* - *scoren*, *scoeren*; and *swoor*, *swoer* - *sworen*, *swoeren*.
2. A few verbs whose stems end in *k* also belong to Class IV: *breken* 'to break', *spreken* 'to speak', *wreken* 'to avenge, revenge'.
3. The verb *trecken* 'to pull', which was originally weak, could also follow the Class IV strong verb pattern.
4. From an historical point of view, *comen* 'to come' belongs to Class IV, although it is irregular. Its preterit forms are: *quam*, *quamen*. The past participle usually occurs without the prefix *ghe*, i.e. *comen*. (In the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter, however, Dirc Potter uses *ghecomen*.)

15.3.2. Class V: \bar{e} - *a* - \bar{a} - \bar{e}

Table 37 indicates the vowel gradation pattern of strong verbs belonging to Class V:

Table 37. Class V strong verbs: vowel gradation pattern

infinitive	1st sg. pret.	1st pl. pret.	past participle
<i>gheven</i> 'to give'	<i>gaf</i>	<i>gaven</i>	<i>ghegheven</i>
<i>lesen</i> 'to read'	<i>las</i>	<i>lasen</i>	<i>ghelesen</i>
<i>meten</i> 'to measure'	<i>mat</i>	<i>maten</i>	<i>ghemeten</i>

The following verbs require special attention:

1. Three verbs have *i* in the first principal part. The remaining forms are regular: *bidden* 'to pray', *ligghen* 'to lie', and *sitten* 'to sit'.
2. The past participle of *eten* 'to eat' is *gheten*, *gheēten*, or *ghegheten*.
3. *wesen* 'to be' evinces grammatical change only in the preterit plural. Its past participle may take the dental suffix (*e*)*d*, borrowed from the weak verbs, or the expected *en*: *wesen* - *was* - *waren* (*r* < *z*) - *gheweest*, *ghewesen*.
4. *sien* 'to see' also belongs to Class V. It displays remnants of grammatical change: *sien* - *sach* - *saghen* - *ghesien*.

15.3.3. Class VI: *ā* - *oe* - *oe* - *ā*

Table 38 indicates the vowel gradation pattern of strong verbs belonging to Class VI:

Table 38. Class VI strong verbs: vowel gradation pattern

infinitive	1st sg. pret.	1st pl. pret.	past participle
<i>varen</i> 'to travel'	<i>voer</i>	<i>voeren</i>	<i>ghevaren</i>
<i>laden</i> 'to load'	<i>loet</i>	<i>loeden</i>	<i>gheladen</i>

The following verbs require special attention:

1. Some verbs which historically belong to Class VI have *e* instead of *a* in the first principal part: *beseffen* 'to realize', *heffen* 'to raise, lift', *sceppen* 'to create'. In addition, they also have *ie* as a preterit marker both in the singular and the plural, e.g. *hi besief*, *si hief*, *si sciepen*.
2. *backen* 'to bake', *wasschen* 'to wash', and *wassen* 'to grow' have a short vowel in the first and fourth principal part. They use *ie* in the preterit singular and plural stems, e.g. *hi wiesch* 'he washed'.
3. *dwaen* 'to clean' and *slaen* 'to hit': pret. *dwoech* - *dwoeghen* and *sloech* - *sloeghen*; In their past participles, the expected stem vowel *a* occurs, but one may also find *e*, i.e. *ghedwaghen*, *ghedweghen* and *gheslaghen*, *ghesleghen*.
4. *draghen* 'to carry, wear': In the past participle, both *ghedraghen* and *ghedreghen* are attested.
5. The Middle Dutch equivalents of English "to stand" are *staen* and *standen*. In the preterit, *stoet*, *stoeden* and *stont*, *stonden* are found. Past participles are *ghestaen* and *ghestanden*.

Chapter 16

Karel ende Elegast [Charles and Elegast]

16.1. Reading and textual analysis: *Karel ende Elegast* [Charles and Elegast]

The only complete Frankish romance in the Middle Dutch language is *Karel ende Elegast* [Charles and Elegast], which is believed to be an original composition. Frankish romances portray Charlemagne, who is frequently represented as an old, weak king, who is cruel and unjust towards his subjects. They often focus on the theme of loyalty and betrayal. In *Karel ende Elegast*, however, Charlemagne is depicted as a strong and just person with strong Christian beliefs.

Karel ende Elegast is a short epic poem written in Flemish by an unknown author. Some critics place its original composition as early as the twelfth century, others locate it in the mid-thirteenth century. In any case, the poem was very popular. A few incunabula are extant, the oldest one dating from the year 1480.

No French original has been found for *Karel ende Elegast*. A translation of the Middle Dutch work is included in the Middle High German *Karl Meinet*, which was probably written around 1300. The fact that *Karel ende Elegast* refers to typically Germanic customs and proper names supports the view that it was an original Germanic composition rather than a translation or adaption from French.

One night an angel appears to Charlemagne and urges him to go out and steal something. In spite of his initial confusion at this singular request, Charlemagne obeys and meets Elegast, a duke whom he had previously banned from the realm. Notwithstanding his banishment, Elegast has always remained faithful to Charlemagne. The Emperor does not reveal his true identity to Elegast, and together they set out with the intent of robbery. They end up at Eggeric van Eggermonde's castle, where a conspiracy against Charlemagne is being planned. At this point Charlemagne understands the reason behind the angel's odd command. On the next day, when the attack is to take place, the Emperor is able to disarm Eggeric and his men. Eggeric denies his true intentions, and a duel between him and Elegast is ordained to ascertain God's judgment and will. Elegast wins, and receives Eggeric's wife, who is Charlemagne's sister, as a reward.

This passage describes the events preceding the duel:

- 1 *Hi hiet den camp ghereyden*
Ende bat god, dat hi moest scheiden
Den camp ende tgheuechte
Na reden ende na rechte
- 5 *Die coninc trooste elegast wel*
Ende seide verghinge wel sijn spel.
Ende behilti sijn leuen
Hi soudem sijnder suster geuen
Die eggeric hadde te voren
- 10 *Die sijn doot had ghesworen*
En sloech coerden opt velt
Daer menich man ghewapent helt
Een luttel voor vespertijt
Elegast quam eerst int crijt
- 15 *Om datti aen legger was*
Hi beette neder int gras
Ende viel in knien ghebede
Ende seide god doer v goedertierenhede
Ic come v heden te ghenaden
- 20 *Van allen minen misdaden.*
Die mi ye gheuel
Ic kenne mine misdaet wel
Oetmoedich god diet vermach
En wreect niet op desen dach.
- 25 *An mi mine sonden.*
Doer v heyliche vijf wonden.
Die ghi ontfinct doer onse misdaet.
Hebt heden mijns raet
So dat ic niet en sterue.
- 30 *Noch inden camp en bederue*

- 1 *hiet ... ghereyden*: 'ordered that ... be prepared'
camp: acc. m. sg. of *camp* 'lists, arena'
- 2 *moest*: subj. II, 3rd sg. of *moeten* 'may, shall'
scheiden: inf. 'to decide, determine'
- 3 *tghevechte*: *t* + *ghevechte*; *t*: cl. art. 'the'; *ghevechte*: acc. nt. sg.
of *ghevechte* 'fight, battle'
- 4 *na reden ende rechte*: 'in justice and fairness'
- 5 *trooste*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *troosten* 'to encourage, support'
- 6 *verghinge*: subj. II, 3rd sg. of *vergaen* 'to turn out, end'
spel: nom. nt. sg. 'tournament, tilt'
- 7 *behilti*: *behilde* + *i*; *behilde*: subj. II, 3rd sg. of *behouden* 'to
keep'; *i*: cl. pron. 'he'
leuen: acc. nt. sg. of *leuen* 'life'

- 8 *Hi soudem sijnder suster geuen:* 'He would give him his sister in marriage.'
- 9 *die:* rel. pron. 'whom' (antecedent is *sijnder suster*)
te voren: adv. 'earlier'
- 10 *die:* rel. pron. 'who' (antecedent is *eggeric*)
doot: acc. f./m. sg. of *doot* 'death'
had ghesworen: 'had sworn'; *had:* auxiliary verb in the ind. pret.;
ghesworen: pp. of *sweren* 'to swear'
- 11 *en:* should probably have been *men*
sloeck: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *slaen*, here: 'to put up, rope off'
coerden: acc. f. pl. of *coerde* 'cord, rope'
velt: acc. nt. sg. of *velt* 'field'
- 12 *menich:* indef. num. 'many (a)'
ghewapent: pp. of *wapenen* 'to arm'
helt: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *houden*, here: 'to stand'
- 13 *een luttel voor vespertijt:* 'shortly before the vesper-hour'
- 14 *crijt:* acc. nt. sg. of *crijt* 'circle, ring'
- 15 *om datti:* *om dat* + *i*; *om dat:* conj. 'since, because'; *i:* cl. pron. 'he'
- aen legger:* nom. m. sg. 'challenger, accuser'
- 16 *beette neder:* ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *nederbeten* 'to dismount, get off'
- 17 *viel:* ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *vallen* 'to fall'
- 18 *doer:* prep. 'through, by means of'
- v = u*
goedertierenhede: acc. f. sg. of *goedertierenhede* 'mercifulness'
- 19 *ic come v heden te ghenaden:* 'I am now begging you for mercy'
- 20 *misdaden:* dat. f. pl. of *misdaet* 'misdeed, offence'
- 21 *die:* rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *allen minen misdaden*)
ye: adv. 'ever'
- gheuel:* ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *gheuallen* 'to happen to'
- 23 *oetmoedich:* adj. *oetmoedich* 'merciful, benevolent'
diet: *die* + *et*; *die:* rel. pron. 'who' (antecedent is *oetmoedich god*); *et:* cl. pron. 'it'
- vermach:* ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *vermoghén* 'to have the power to'
- 24 *wreect:* impv. 2nd pl. of *wreken* 'to avenge'
- 25 *an:* prep. 'on'
- sonden:* acc. f. pl. of *sonde* 'sin'
- 26 *vijf:* num. 'five'
- wonden:* acc. f. pl. of *wonde* 'wound, injury'
- 27 *die:* rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *u heylighe vijf wonden*)
ontfincit: ind. 2nd pl. pret. of *ontfangen*, *ontfaen* 'to receive'
- 28 *hebt heden mijns raet:* 'protect me now'
- 29 *sterue:* subj. I, 1st sg. of *steruen* 'to die'
- 30 *bederue:* subj. I, 1st sg. of *bederuen* 'to die, perish'

16.2. Indicative preterit and past participles of strong verbs: Class VII

Characteristic of Class VII verbs is the stem vowel *ie* in the second and third principal part. The past participle of Class VII verbs always has the same stem vowel as that of the infinitive, but there are several possible infinitive (and past participle) stem vowels for this verb class. In the excerpt from *Karel ende Elegast*, the following verbs belong to Class VII: *heten* 'to call, be called, order', *vergaen* 'to perish', *behouden* 'to keep, retain', *houden* 'to hold, keep', *vallen* 'to fall', *gheuallen* 'to happen to'. Table 39 lists the most common Class VII verbs:

Table 39. Common Class VII verbs

infinitive	pret. 1st sg. - pl.	past participle
<i>bannen</i> 'to banish, expel'	<i>bien - bienen</i>	<i>ghebannen</i>
<i>heten</i> 'to order, be called'	<i>hiet - hieten</i>	<i>gheheten</i>
<i>laten</i> 'to let'	<i>liet - lieten</i>	<i>ghelaten</i>
<i>lopen</i> 'to run'	<i>liep - liepen</i>	<i>ghelopen</i>
<i>raden</i> 'to advise, counsel'	<i>riet - rieden</i>	<i>gheraden</i>
<i>roepen</i> 'to call, shout'	<i>riep - riepen</i>	<i>gheroepen</i>
<i>sceiden</i> 'to separate'	<i>sciet - scieden</i>	<i>ghesceiden</i>
<i>stoten</i> 'to push, thrust'	<i>stiet - stieten</i>	<i>ghestoten</i>
<i>slapen</i> 'to sleep'	<i>sliep - sliepen</i>	<i>gheslapen</i>
<i>vallen</i> 'to fall'	<i>viel - vielen</i>	<i>ghevallen</i>

The following verbs require special attention:

1. *vallen* 'to fall': pret. *vel* - *vellen* is also attested.
2. For the infinitive *houden* 'to hold, keep', the following preterit forms occur: *helt* - *helden*.
3. Also irregular are *vaen* (less frequently *vanghen*) 'to catch', *hanghen* (less frequently *haen*) 'to hang', and *ganghen* 'to go', which all have a short vowel in the pret., i.e. *vinc* - *vinghen*, *hinc* - *hinghen*, *ginc* - *ginghen*. (In the present, forms of *ganghen* are mixed up with those of the cognate verb *gaen* 'to go', hence *ic gae* 'I go'.) Attested past participles are: *ghevaen*/*ghevanghen*, *gehanghen*, *gegaen*/*geganghen*.

16.3. Review: survey of the vowel gradation pattern of strong verbs

Table 40 serves as a survey of the vowel gradation pattern of the strong verb classes introduced in Chapters 14, 15, and 16:

Table 40. Strong verbs Classes I-VII: overview

class	infinitive	1st sg. pret.	1st pl. pret.	past participle
I	<i>ī</i>	<i>ē</i>	<i>ē</i>	<i>ē</i>
IIa	<i>ie</i>	<i>ō</i>	<i>ō</i>	<i>ō</i>
IIb	<i>ū</i>	<i>ō</i>	<i>ō</i>	<i>ō</i>
IIIa	<i>e</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
IIIb	<i>i</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
IV	<i>ē</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>ō</i>
V	<i>ē</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>ē</i>
VI	<i>ā</i>	<i>œ</i>	<i>œ</i>	<i>ā</i>
VII		<i>ie</i>	<i>ie</i>	

Table 40 does not list any vowel for the infinitive and past participle forms of Class VII verbs, since several vowels occur in those principal parts (See 16.2).

16.4. Compound tenses I: the present perfect and the past perfect tense

All Germanic languages have only two simple tenses: the present and the preterit tense. The other tenses are expressed by means of auxiliary verbs and are therefore called compound tenses.

In Middle Dutch, the present perfect tense and the past perfect (or pluperfect) tense are formed by using an auxiliary verb (*sijn*, *wesen* or *hebben*) and a past participle. The auxiliary verb of the present perfect tense occurs in the present, while the auxiliary verb of the past perfect tense is in the preterit:

- (134) *Dus ben ic hier comen vore u.* (17:18)
 therefore aux. I here come before you
 'Therefore I have come here before you.'

- (135) *Dit hevet men Waleweyne brocht.* (13:15)
 this aux. one to Waleweyn brought
 'One has brought this to Walewein.'
- (136) *Oetmoedelic is hi gheneghen.* (15:9)
 humbly aux. he knelt
 'Humbly, he has knelt.'
- (137) *Die sine doet hadde ghesworen* (16:10)
 who his death aux. sworn
 'Who had sworn his death'
- (138) *Die Chalistomus hadde ghescreven* (15:20)
 which Chalistomus aux. written
 'Which Chalistomus had written'

The auxiliary verb *hebben* is used most frequently. It occurs

- (i) with transitive verbs, e.g. *scriven* 'to write'.
- (ii) with verbs that govern the genitive case, e.g. *vernemen* 'to notice'.
- (iii) with verbs that require a prepositional object, e.g. *haken na* 'to hanker for', *wachten na* 'to wait for'.
- (iv) with intransitive verbs which do not express any change in place or condition, e.g. *tornieren* 'to joust', *screyen* 'to cry'.
- (v) with impersonal constructions, e.g. *dunken* 'to seem'.

If the main verb is intransitive and expresses a change in place or condition, *sijn* or *wesen* (See 16.5) are used as auxiliary verbs, e.g. *nighen* 'to make a bow', *comen* 'to come', *gaen* 'to go', *werden* 'to become', *climmen* 'to climb'. The verb *wesen* 'to be' is attested with all three auxiliaries in different texts. *bliven* 'to stay, remain' takes the auxiliary *sijn* or *wesen* in the perfect tenses, as in (139):

- (139) *Egidius, waer bestu bleven?*
 Egidius where aux. you stayed
 'Egidius, where have you stayed (been)?'

Due to the context, it may be necessary to translate the present perfect tense form of a Middle Dutch sentence into a simple past tense in English in order to maintain grammatical correctness of the English sentence.

16.5. *sijn* 'to be'

The verb *sijn* 'to be' is defective, it does not have any forms in the preterit tense. Instead, it uses the forms of the strong verb *wesen* 'to be' (Class V) in the preterit. The past participle *ghesijn* occurs sporadically.

16.6. *doen* 'to do'

Indicative present tense: regular, i.e. *ic doe, du does, hi, si, het doet, ...*

Indicative preterit tense:

ic dede *wi daden, deden*

du daets, dades *ghi daet, deet*

hi, si dede *si daden, deden*

Past participle: *ghedaen*

The verb *doen* 'to do' was used as an auxiliary, as a substitute for a preceding verb, or in the sense 'to have [someone] do'.

As an auxiliary verb, *doen* occurred in combination with an infinitive, as in (140):

- (140) *Sonder* *eene* *menechte* *cleene,*
 except.for a crowd small
Die *God* *selve* *beschermen* *dede.*
 which God himself protected did
 'Except for a small crowd, which God himself protected (did protect).'

As a replacement for a preceding verb, *doen* was used, as in (141):

- (141) *Ganc* *henen.* *Vader,* *ic* *doe*
 go away father I do
 'Go away! Father, I am doing that.'

As part of an idiomatic expression, *doen* is combined with an infinitive and means: 'to have [someone] do', as in (142) and (143):

- (142) *Diet* *dede* *maken* *hi* *was* *rike.* (13:23)
 he.who.it had made he was wealthy
 'He who had it made was wealthy.'

- (143) *In* *die* *sale* *dede* *hi* *spreiden*
 in the hall had he spread

Een utermaten swarte cleet. (14:2-3)
a completely black cloth
'In the hall, he had (someone) spread a completely black cloth.'

16.7. The declined infinitive (the gerund)

The infinitive was originally a neuter noun, and as such, it was declinable. In Middle Dutch, one frequently finds the infinitive with the dative ending *e* following the preposition *te*, e.g. *te rijden* 'to ride'. Already during the fourteenth century, the final *e* could be apocopated in the dialects of Holland and Brabant, e.g. *te verderven* 'to ruin'. If the infinitive stem ended in *l*, *n*, or *r*, syncope of the immediately following weakly stressed *e* was common, e.g. *te bewonderne* 'to admire', *te valne* 'to fall', e.g.

(144) *Want hi hem wel ware betame,*
because it him well would.be suitable
Met te rijden in zinen lande; (9:14-15)
with.it to ride in his land
'Because it seemed suitable for him to ride with it to his land.'

(145) *Dan omden gueden te verderven*
except in.order.to.the good.one to ruin
Ende hoirs vriendes wille te werven.
and her friend's acceptance to gain
(15:24-25)
'Except to ruin the good one and to gain the acceptance of her friend.'

Chapter 17

Ferguut (II)

17.1. Reading and textual analysis: *Ferguut*

The reading selection below is taken from *Ferguut*, which was introduced in Chapter 14. In this passage, Ferguut has just arrived at King Arthur's court where Keye, one of the knights, has made fun of him. While doing so, Keye has mentioned a veil and a horn which are guarded by a Black Knight. Ferguut now wants to take revenge on Keye for his mockery and decides to conquer the Black Knight. He indicates his intentions to King Arthur as follows:

- 1 *Mettien heft die coninc gesproken:*
 "Neen vrient, het waer quaet gedaen
 Wildine hier vore ons allen slaen.
 Maect ons hier af een gestille.
- 5 *Hi saelt u betren tuwen wille.*
 Segt mi, dat u God verde van lede!
 Waer naemdi die hoofde bede,
 Die ghi achter u hebt geknocht?"
 "Here, ic loeft, ic beens bedocht.
- 10 *Viere dieve quamen naesten ane mi*
 In een foreest niet verre hier bi
 Ende wilden hebben mijn part.
 Si waenden mi hebben vervaert.
 Si staken mi met haren speren
- 15 *Ende doen begonstic mi weren.*
 Here dese twee sloegic te doet
 Ende dandere onfloen dore die noet.
 Dus ben ic hier comen vore u.
 Suldi mi onthouden nu?
- 20 *Ik wille u raetsman sijn twaren*
 Ende morgen vroe so willic varen
 Halen den wimpele ende dien horen."
 "Vrient," seide die coninc, "du waers verloren
 Ende du en waerst die ierste niet.
- 25 *Hen was noit man die danen sciet*
 Noch die den ridder conste ontgaen;

- Up dat en willic di niet ontfaen."*
"Here," sprac die knape, "wete God
U riddere hout met mi sijn spot.
 30 *Soe hulpe mi God uut alre noet*
Ic salre varen, in blive doet."
"Ja, vrient, ic sal di onthouden.
Onse Here moete di behouden."
- 1 *mettien = mittien*
 2 *neen: adv. 'no'*
waer ... gedaen: 'would be done'; waer: auxiliary verb in the subj.
II; gedaen: pp. of doen 'to do'
quaet: adv. 'badly'
 3 *wildine hier vore ons allen slaen: 'if you slayed him [= Keye] here*
in front of us all'
 4 *maect ons hier af een gestille: 'do not talk about it to us'*
 5 *saelt ... betren: sal + et betren; 'will make it ... up'; sal:*
auxiliary verb in the ind. pres.; et: cl. pron. 'it'; betren: inf. 'to
make up, indemnify'
 6 *dat: conj. 'in order that, so that'*
verde: subj. I, 3rd sg. of verden 'to protect'
lede: dat. nt. sg. of leet 'grief, sorrow'
 7 *naemdi: naemd + i; naemd: ind. 2nd pl. pret. of nemen 'to take';*
i: cl. pron. 'you'
bede: num. 'both'
 8 *die: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is die hoefde bede)*
achter: prep. 'behind'
 9 *loeft: love + et; love: ind. 1st sg. pres. of loven 'to promise'; et:*
cl. pron. 'it'
ic beens bedocht: 'I am aware of it'
 10 *viere: num. 'four'*
dieve: nom. m. pl. of dief 'thief'
naesten: adv. 'recently, lately'
 11 *foreest: acc. nt. sg. of foreest 'forest, wood'*
verre: adv. 'far'
 12 *wilden: ind. 3rd pl. pret. of willen 'to want, wish'*
part: acc. nt. sg. of part 'horse'
 13 *vervaert: pp. of vervaren 'to intimidate'*
 14 *speren: dat. nt./m./f. pl. of spere, spear 'spear'*
 15 *mi weren: inf. weren (refl.) 'to defend oneself'*
 16 *te doet: 'to death'*
 17 *ontfloen: ind 3rd pl. pret. of ontflien 'to escape, get away'*
dore = doer
noet: acc. f. sg. of noet 'distress'

- 18 *dus*: adv. 'thus'
- 19 *suldi ... onthouden*: 'will you employ'; *suld + i ... onthouden*;
suld: auxiliary verb in the ind. pres.; *i*: cl. pron. 'you';
onthouden: inf. 'to employ'
- 20 *wille*: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *willen* 'to want, wish'
raetsman: nom. m. sg. of *raetsman* 'adviser, counsel'
twaren: adv. 'for sure'
- 21 *morgen vroe*: adv. 'tomorrow morning'
willic: *wille + ic*; *wille*: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *willen* 'to want, wish'; *ic*: cl. pron. 'I'
- 22 *halen*: inf. 'to get'
wimpele: acc. m. sg. of *wimpele* 'veil'
horen: acc. m. sg. of *horen* 'horn'
- 23 *waers verloren*: 'would be lost'; *waers*: auxiliary verb in the subj. II; *verloren*: pp. of *verliesen* 'to lose'
- 24 *waerst*: subj. II, 2nd sg. of *wesen* 'to be'
ierste: num. 'first'
- 25 *die*: rel. pron. 'who' (antecedent is *man*)
danen: adv. 'from there'
sciet: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *sceiden* 'to go away, leave'
- 26 *ridder*: dat. m. sg. of *ridder* 'knight'
conste: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *connen* 'to be able'
ontgaen: inf. (+ dat.) 'to escape from'
- 27 *up dat*: 'assuming that, on that condition'
ontfaen: inf. 'to receive, employ'
- 28 *knape*: nom. m. sg. 'boy, page'
wete: subj. I, 3rd sg. of *weten* 'to know'
- 29 *hout ... sijn spot*: 'is teasing, mocking'
- 30 *hulpe*: subj. II, 3rd sg. of *helpen* 'to help'
uut: prep. 'out of, from'
- 31 *salre varen*: *sal + re varen*; 'will go there'; *sal*: auxiliary verb in the ind. pres.; *re*: cl. adv. 'there'; *varen*: inf. 'to go, travel'
in blive doet: 'or else I will die'
- 32 *ja*: adv. 'yes'
sal ... onthouden: 'shall employ'; *sal*: auxiliary verb in the ind. pres.; and *onthouden* 'to employ'
- 33 *moete*: subj. I, 3rd sg. of *moeten* 'to have to, must'
behouden: inf. 'to watch over, guard'

17.2. The origin of the language border in the South

When Clovis founded the Frankish kingdom in 486, he united not only the Frankish tribes, but also included a large population of subjected Gallo-Romans into his territory. Hence, the kingdom consisted of two linguistic groups: one spoke Germanic dialects, the other Vulgar Latin dialects.

In the southern part of Northern Gaul, the Germanic dialects were destined to disappear, as the Gallo-Roman population outnumbered the Franks by far. In the northern part, however, the Dutch dialects were maintained. As late as the ninth century, there was still a bilingual belt in which Romance and Germanic speech communities were living side by side. Over the next two centuries, a linear linguistic border, which has remained relatively intact up to the present day, gradually emerged. The origin of this linear border between Germanic and Romance speech communities has intrigued many scholars. It is certain that the border does not coincide with the geographic limits of the Frankish migrations. The most convincing hypothesis suggests that the border reflects the social integration of both speech communities within a bilingual area from the ninth to the eleventh century.

17.3. Preterit-present verbs

Preterit-present verbs are found in all Germanic languages and include the modal auxiliaries. The original preterit tense form of these verbs acquired present-tense meaning. As a result, a new preterit was formed, similar to that of weak verbs, i.e. they used a dental affix and took the same person/number endings as the weak verbs. The past participle may evince the suffix of the weak verbs, *(e)d*, or the strong verb suffix *en*. Table 41 indicates the common forms in the declension pattern of preterit-present verbs:

Table 41. Preterit-present verbs

infinitive	<i>onnen</i> 'to grant'	<i>dorren</i> 'to dare'	<i>connen</i> 'to be able, can'
present	<i>ic an</i> <i>du ons, onnes,</i> <i>gonnes, jonnes</i> <i>hi, si, het an</i>	<i>ic dar, der, daer</i> <i>du dorres, dars,</i> <i>daers, ders, durs</i> <i>hi, si, het dar, der,</i> <i>daer</i>	<i>ic can</i> <i>du cans, caens,</i> <i>coons</i> <i>hi, si, het can</i>

infinitive	<i>onnen</i> 'to grant'	<i>dorren</i> 'to dare'	<i>connen</i> 'to be able, can'
present	<i>ghi ont</i>	<i>ghi dort, dorret, doert, durt</i>	<i>ghi cont, cunt</i>
preterit	<i>si onnen</i>	<i>si dorren, durren</i>	<i>si connen</i>
past participle	<i>ic onste ... gheonnen, ghegonnen, ghegont</i>	<i>ic dorste, durste ... ghedorren</i>	<i>ic conste ... gheconnen</i>

infinitive	<i>dorven</i> 'to need'	<i>sullen, selen</i> 'shall, will'	<i>weten</i> 'to know'
present	<i>ic darf du dorfs, darfs</i>	<i>ic sal, sel du sout, salt, suls, sels</i>	<i>ic weet, wet du weets, wets</i>
	<i>hi, si, het darf, derf</i>	<i>hi, si, het sal, sel</i>	<i>hi, si, het weet, wet</i>
	<i>wi dorven</i>	<i>wi sullen, selen, solen, selen</i>	<i>wi weten</i>
	<i>ghi dorvet, dorft, derft</i>	<i>ghi sult</i>	<i>ghi weet, wet</i>
	<i>si dorven</i>	<i>si sullen, selen, sellen</i>	<i>si weten</i>
preterit	<i>ic dorste ...</i>	<i>ic soude ...</i>	<i>ic wiste ...</i>
past participle	-	-	<i>gheweten</i>

infinitive	<i>moghen</i> 'to be able, may'	<i>moeten</i> 'may, shall'
present	<i>ic mach du macht, maechs, moghes(t) hi, si, het mach wi moghen, meughen ghi moghet, moocht si moghen, meughen</i>	<i>ic moet du moets hi, si, het moet wi moeten ghi moet si moeten</i>
preterit	<i>ic mochte ...</i>	<i>ic moeste ...</i>
past participle	<i>ghemoghen, ghemocht</i>	<i>ghemoeten</i>

17.4. *willen* 'to want, wish'

The conjugation pattern of *willen* 'to want, wish' is irregular. Two stems are attested for the preterit: (*ic*) *wilde* and (*ic*) *woude*. In the indicative present tense, *willen* is conjugated as follows:

ic wille, du wils, hi, si, het wille (later: *wilt*), *wi willen, ghi wilt, si willen*

The indicative preterit tense forms are: *ic wilde, woude*, etc.

The past participle is *ghewilt*. *ghewout* occurs sporadically.

17.5. The future tense

In Middle Dutch, the present tense was often used to refer to a state or an action in the future. However, it was also possible to use the auxiliary verb *sullen* (*selen*) and an infinitive for the same purpose. Examples of expressions in the future tense from the reading excerpts in this book are:

- (146) *Dat sal hi becoepen saen.* (9:6)
 that will he atone.for immediately
 'For that he will immediately atone.'
- (147) *Suldi mi onthouden nu?* (17:19)
 will.you me employ now
 'Will you employ me now?'
- (148) *Ic salre varen.* (17:31)
 I will.there go
 'I will go there.'
- (149) *Ic sal di onthouden.* (17:32)
 I will you employ
 'I will employ you now.'

Chapter 18

Beatrijs van Nazareth

18.1. Reading and textual analysis: Beatrijs van Nazareth

Middle Dutch mysticism found its first expression in the work of Beatrijs van Nazareth, a nun who lived in the first half of the thirteenth century (1200-1268). Her last name is derived from the convent near Lier in present-day Belgium, where she spent the last thirty-two years of her life: *Onze-Lieve-Vrouw van Nazareth* (Our Lady of Nazareth). Very early in her life, Beatrijs was exposed to rigorous religious practices, being sent to the Beguines' House in Zoutleeuw for educational purposes at the age of eleven. She is the author of several visions, an autobiography, and religious treatises, but only one work has survived, the short *Seven Manieren van Minnen* [Seven Forms of Love], which also has the distinction of being the earliest available prose writing in Middle Dutch. In *Seven Manieren van Minnen* Beatrijs describes the process by which love, which came from God, is purified and transformed within the human soul before it can return to God. R. P. Meijer describes Beatrijs in his *Literature of the Low Countries* as a person who "wrote a simple and clear style, quiet and well-balanced, but sometimes seasoned with a vehemence of expression that foreshadows the later mystics." (p. 16-17) The following reading passage contains a description of the sixth form of love, entitled "*Die . seste minne*" [The Sixth Love].

Die . seste minne.

- 1 *A'lse die bruut ons heren vorder es comen. ende hoger gecloppen*
in meerren vromen. 'so geuult si noch andre maniere van minnen,
in naerren wesene ende in hogeren bekinne. 'Si geuult dat die
minne verwonnen heft al hare wedersaken binnen hare. 'ende datsi
5 *ghebetert heft die gebrekingen ende ghemeestert heft < die senne*
ende gesirt heft die nature ende gemeret ende gehoeght heft > dat
wesen, ende hars selfs altemale sonder wederseggen. geweldich es
worden. 'also, datsi therte beseten heeft in sekerheiden, ende
gebruken mach in rasten, ende ufenen moet in vriheiden.
10 *Alsi hier in es, soe dunct hare alle dinc wesen clene, ende licht te*
doene ende te latene. 'te dogene ende te verdragene dat behort // ter

werdicheit der minnen. 'ende so es har sachte har seluen te ufene in der minnen.

- 15 *Dan so geuult si enen godeleke mogentheid. 'ende ene clare purheit. ende ene geestelike sutheit, ende ene begerlike vriheit. 'ende ene onderscedege wijsheit, ende ene sachte effenheit < tonsen here ende een nakenisse van > gode.*

- 1 *a'lse: conj. 'when'*
bruut: nom. f. sg. 'bride'
vorder: adv. 'forward'
hoger: comp. of hooch, hoge 'highly'
- 2 *meerren: comp. of vele, veel 'much, many'*
vromen: dat. f. sg. of vrome 'benefit, profit'
geuult: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of geuulen 'to feel'
noch: adv. 'still, yet'
maniere: acc. f. pl. of maniere 'manner, way'
- 3 *naerren: comp. of naer 'close, near'*
wesene: dat. nt. sg. of wesen 'being, existence'
hogeren: comp. of hooch, hoghe 'high'
bekinne: dat. nt. sg. of bekin 'knowledge, insight'
- 4 *verwonnen: pp. of verwinnen 'to conquer, gain victory over'*
wedersaken: acc. m. pl. of wedersake, wedersaec 'opponent, antagonist'
- 5 *gebrekingen: acc. pl. of gebrekinge 'shortcoming'*
ghemeestert: pp. of meesteren 'to master, overpower'
senne: acc. m. pl. of sen 'mind, sense'
- 6 *gesirt: pp. of siren 'to adorn, decorate'*
nature: acc. f. sg. of nature 'temperament, human nature'
gemeret: pp. of meren 'to enlarge, increase'
gehoeght: pp. of hoeghen 'to elevate, enhance'
- 7 *altemale: adv. 'altogether, entirely'*
sonder: prep. 'without'
wederseggen: inf. 'to contradict, resist'
geweldich: adj. geweldich 'powerful, mighty'
- 8 *'also: adv. 'thus, in this way'*
beseten: pp. of besitten 'to possess, conquer'
sekerheiden: dat. f. sg. of sekerheit 'confidence, peace of mind'
- 9 *gebruken: inf. 'to enjoy, relish'*
rasten: dat. f. sg. of raste 'peace of mind, rest'
ufenen: inf. 'to practice'
vriheiden: dat. f. sg. of vriheide 'independence, self-reliance'
- 10 *alsi = alse + si*
dunct: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of dunken 'to seem'
clene = cleyne

- 11 *licht*: adj. *licht* 'easy'
 te doene: 'to perform'
 (*te*) *latene*: 'to abandon, omit'
 (*te*) *dogene*: 'to suffer, tolerate'
 (*te*) *verdragene*: 'to endure, stand'
 dat: indef. rel. pron. 'that which'
 behort: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *behoren* 'to belong'
 12 *werdicheit*: dat. f. sg. of *werdicheit* 'value, worth'
 sachte: adj. *sachte* 'gentle, sweet'
 te ufene: 'to practice'
 14 *godeleke*: adj. *godeleke* 'Godly, pious'
 mogentheid: acc. f. sg. of *mogentheid* 'vital strength, vitality'
 purheit: acc. f. sg. of *purheit* 'purity'
 15 *geestelike*: adj. *geestelijk* 'spiritual'
 sutheit: acc. f. sg. of *sutheit* 'sweetness'
 begerlike: adj. *begerlijk* 'desirable'
 vriheit = *vriheide*
 16 *onderscedege*: adj. *onderscedech* 'judicious, discreet'
 effenheit: acc. f. sg. of *effenheit* 'fairness, moderateness'
 17 *nakenisse*: acc. f. sg. of *nakenisse* 'comprehension'

18.2. Social and economical changes during the High Middle Ages

Charlemagne's Empire did not remain one political entity for long. By 843 the Treaty of Verdun dictated a three-way division of the Empire, which coincided roughly with later national boundaries. The western part (what is now most of modern France) was assigned to Charles the Bald, the territories east of the Rhine (which became the nucleus of modern Germany) were received by Louis the German, and the so-called Middle Kingdom (which included Rome and Aachen) was assigned to Lothar. During the late tenth century, the borders were modified again. Germany and a large part of the Low Countries owed allegiance to the Holy Roman Emperor of Germany, while the county of Flanders came under the jurisdiction of the French king. In the following centuries, parts of the Middle Kingdom remained a source of dispute between France and Germany.

Historians usually refer to the period between circa 1050 and 1300 as the High Middle Ages. During these years significant transformations of the existing social and economic structures took place. By the twelfth century a shift toward urbanization was clearly noticeable. Towns had sprung up on the territories of several lords, and a new, rapidly-growing class of merchants

began to organize into guilds. In a similar manner, medieval artisans founded craft guilds in order to protect themselves against competition and to ensure the quality of their merchandise. Within the Dutch-speaking regions, the county of Flanders was the first to become a major industrial center. It had developed a significant textile industry and attracted merchants from the British Isles, Scandinavia, and Germany. The large cities of Brabant developed only later and owed their new commercial prosperity to the silting up of the Zwin in Flanders. During the late Middle Ages, Antwerp completely replaced Bruges as the leading financial center north of the Alps. The emergence of the cities in the county of Holland began relatively late, during the fifteenth and sixteenth century.

The rise of commerce and trade also brought about a gradual change in social relations. By the end of the fifteenth century, the influence of nobility and clergy had waned, while the merchant class had considerably increased in significance.

While it is true that the High Middle Ages may be characterized by the growth of towns and cities, medieval society remained primarily agricultural. Large parts of the countryside remained unaffected by the urban activity. However, several advances in the field of agriculture improved the quality of life of the farmers. New tools were invented, and these changes resulted in a greater variety and increased availability of crops.

18.3. Middle Dutch dialects

The study of Middle Dutch is the study of several dialects spoken between the twelfth and fifteenth century in the Low Countries. Our knowledge of these dialects is necessarily incomplete, since only written records are available. These may be official documents, literary or religious texts. When the need arose to write down documents in the vernacular, the familiar Latin alphabet was used. However, the Germanic idiom consisted of some sounds that did not exist in Latin. In such cases, a combination of two or more Latin graphemes to represent one Germanic phoneme was used. There were no uniform spelling practices so that Middle Dutch manuscripts display a diversity of spellings for one phoneme, often varying even within one and the same manuscript. Differences in spelling could also be due to geographical and temporal differences.

The fact that we have virtually no original manuscripts available also impedes our knowledge of the language. We usually possess copies of copies (of copies), and sometimes a century separates the original composition of a given work and the copy currently available. Such copies may be colored by the dialect of the scribe, who sometimes substituted unusual or archaic words, or modified impure rhymes. Scribes also used their own orthographic

system. Their concern was not to reproduce a faithful copy, so they might, for example, have tried to adapt an original to the audience for whom they were writing. As an example, Beatrijs van Nazareth's *Seven Manieren van Minnen* [Seven Ways of Love] was originally written in the dialect of Brabant, but we now possess a rewrite in the dialect of Limburg.

Dialect study is not limited to phonetic variation. It is important to realize that there are also lexical variants between different regions, e.g. a given word or phrase may frequently be used in one region, and be virtually unknown in another one. Morphological variations may also be found, e.g. in West Flemish, the plural marker *s* is frequently used for nouns ending in weakly stressed *er(e)*, e.g. *ridders* 'knights'.

It would be wrong to assume that medieval authors had no contact with speakers from other dialects. While this may have been the case for the (illiterate) peasants in the country, the situation in the large cities and monasteries was quite different. Monasteries often attracted monks from different regions, noblemen married within noble families from distant territories, and large medieval cities such as Ghent, Damme, Mechlin, and Bruges attracted merchants from many different areas of the Low Countries.

Medieval writers favored a language that could easily be understood by distant readers, so they tended to avoid regional peculiarities. Therefore the literary language, as it has come down to us, reflects those elements that were easily understood in the complete Middle Dutch territory.

Historical linguists have compiled lists of features which are typical for each of the four major dialect groups of Middle Dutch. I will list some of these characteristics below. It is important to remember that such lists are abstractions, so that no one dialect displays all of the cited features exclusively. If several features listed for one dialect occur regularly within one document, however, one may be justified in speculating about its origin. (Forms listed between parentheses are attested in the other dialects.)

18.3.1. Flemish

1. The sequence *er* + cons. is often spelled *ar*, *aer*, e.g. *karke* 'church', *varre* 'far' (cf. *kerke* and *verre*).
2. *ü* occurs instead of *o* in certain words, e.g. *up* 'on', *wulf* 'wolf', *vul* 'full' (cf. *op*, *wolf*, *vol*). This happens frequently in the coastal region.
3. *ü* loses rounding and is pronounced *i*, e.g. *brigghe* 'bridge', *dinne* 'thin', *pit* 'pit, whole' (cf. *brugghe*, *dunne*, *put*).
4. *h* is omitted in front of a vowel, or non-etymological *h* is added in the same position, e.g. *heten* 'to eat', *arde* 'very', *ant* 'hand' (cf. *eten*, *harde*, *hant*).

5. Typical of West Flemish is the occurrence of the prefix *i, y* where other dialects have *ghe*, e.g. *yvarwet* 'painted', *idaen* 'done' (cf. *ghevarwet*, *ghedaen*).
6. Especially in West Flemish, nouns ending in *er(e)* often take *s* in the plural, e.g. *ridders* 'knights' (cf. *riddere*).

18.3.2. Brabantic

1. (a) *a* > *e* before *cht* and *ere*, e.g. *mechtig* 'powerful', *beckere* 'baker', *grecht* 'ditch' (cf. *machtig*, *backere*, *gracht*);
 (b) *ā* > *ē*, e.g. *blesen* 'to blow', *wenen* 'to fancy, imagine', *ghenede* 'grace, mercy' (cf. *blasen*, *wanen*, *ghenade*);
 (c) *oe* > *ū*, e.g. *gruene* 'green', *cuene* 'bold, daring', *sueken* 'to look for' (cf. *groene*, *coene*, *soeken*);
 (d) *ō* > *ū*, e.g. *ghelueven* 'to believe', *ghi tuecht* 'you are showing' (cf. *gheloven*, *ghi toocht*);
 (e) *e* > *i*, e.g. *hilpen* 'to help', *sinden* 'to send', *mit* 'with' (cf. *helpen*, *senden*, *met*);
2. *o* occurs where Flemish dialects have *ū*, e.g. *locht* 'air', *vrocht* 'fear', *dos* 'consequently, therefore' (cf. *lucht*, *vrucht*, *dus*).
3. Lengthening of *e, i, o* in front of *l, n, s*, e.g. *gheelden* 'to be valid', *twiintich* 'twenty', *weelc* 'which' (cf. *ghelden*, *twintich*, *welc*).
4. In final position of weakly stressed syllables, *e* and *n* are often apocopated, e.g. *knaep* 'boy, fellow', *leeraer* 'teacher', *si sele* 'they shall' (cf. *knape*, *leerare*, *si selen*).
5. The plural ending *e* for strong masculine and neuter nouns is maintained until as late as the second half of the fourteenth century, e.g. *dage* 'days'. Later, *en* frequently occurs.

18.3.3. Limburgic

Note that the features which are listed for the Brabantic dialects also occur in the written documents of Limburg.

1. Voiceless consonants are voiced in front of the syncopated preterit affix *d*, e.g. *makde* 'made', *kusde* 'kissed', *stopde* 'stopped' (cf. *maecte*, *kuste*, *stoppe*).
2. The older sequence *ol/al* + dental stop remains unshifted (See 1.13), e.g. *old* 'old', *holden* 'to keep' (cf. *out*, *houden*).
3. Especially in the eastern parts of Limburg, final *ch* occurs where other dialects have *k*, e.g. *ich* 'I', *ooch* 'also', *wellich* 'which' (cf. *ic*, *ooc*, *welc*).
4. In the 3rd sg. pres. of strong verbs with an infinitive stem vowel *ē*, the stem vowel changes to *i*, e.g. *hi nimt* 'he takes', *si sprict* 'she speaks' (cf.

nemt, spreect). This also occurs in the imperative, e.g. *ghif!* 'give!', *nim!* 'take!' (cf. *gef!*, *nem!*).

5. The definite article *der* may be used in the nominative masculine singular.

6. For past participles, the prefix *ghe* is not always present where it would occur in other dialects, e.g. *maket* 'made' (cf. *ghemaket*).

18.3.4. Hollandic

It is difficult to determine features that are typical for the dialects of Holland, since the written tradition of Hollandic started relatively late. In addition, the study of those dialects is impeded by the fact that southwestern spelling conventions were frequently imitated in Holland.

1. These dialects use *e* where other dialects have *a*, e.g. *si sel* 'she shall', *blet* 'page, leave' (cf. *sal*, *blat*).

2. One finds the sequence *ft* where other dialects have *cht*, e.g. *craft* 'strength, force', *after* 'after', *ghecoft* 'bought' (cf. *cracht*, *achter*, *ghecocht*).

3. Diminutives are formed by adding *gien*, *giaen*, e.g. *straetgen* 'little street', *keteltgin* 'little kettle', *sticketiaen* 'little piece' (cf. *hertken* 'little heart').

4. *i* occurs where Flemish and Brabantic have *e*, e.g. *mit* 'with', *him* 'him' (cf. *met*, *hem*).

18.4. The comparative and superlative of adjectives

18.4.1. Formation of the comparative and superlative

There are three degrees of comparison: the positive, the comparative, and the superlative. As in other Germanic languages, the comparative and superlative are formed by adding a suffix to the positive form of the adjective. There is also a small group of irregular adjective comparisons.

All adjectives introduced in Chapter 7 are in the positive. Any dictionary and the glossary at the end of this book enters regular adjectives in their positive form only. Examples of such adjectives are: *heyt* 'hot', *groot* 'large, big', *rouwich* 'sad, sorrowful', *vroe* 'merry, cheerful', *betame* 'suitable, becoming', *vremt*, *vremde* 'unknown, unfamiliar', *coene* 'courageous, valiant'.

In order to form a comparative adjective in Middle Dutch, the suffix *er(e)* is added to its positive form. (If the positive ends in weakly stressed *e*, this *e* is apocopated.) Generally speaking, *ere* occurs in the older language, and *er* is found in younger texts. Examples of adjectives in the comparative form are: *hoger* 'higher', *langer* 'longer', *coudere* 'colder'. Sometimes, the first *e* of the

comparative marker is syncopated, e.g. *jongre* 'younger'. If *l*, *n*, or *r* immediately precede *er(e)*, epenthetic *d* may be inserted between the positive and the comparative suffix, e.g. *scoonder* (positive: *scone*, *scoon*) 'prettier, more beautiful', *swaerder* (positive: *swaer*) 'heavier', *edelder* (positive: *edel*) 'nobler'. Comparative meaning may also be conveyed by using the adverbs *bat* (*bet*) 'better' or *meer(re)* 'more' with an adjective in the positive, e.g. *bat out* 'older', *meer scone* 'more beautiful, prettier'. Sometimes *bat* and *meer(re)* are followed by a comparative adjective, and hence a pleonastic construction occurs, e.g. *meere scoonre* 'more beautiful, pretty'.

Following a comparative or an expression with comparative meaning, the conjunction *dan(ne)* 'than' is used and is followed by a noun or pronoun in the nominative case, as is exemplified in (150):

- (150) *Hi was argher danne enech coninc.*
he was worse than any king
 'He was worse than any king.'

The superlative form of the adjective is used to stress the highest degree of a given quality. In Middle Dutch, it is formed by affixing *st* to the positive. *est* occurs seldom and is found only following a dental or a velar stop. Examples of adjectives in the superlative are: *hoechst* 'highest', *crachtichst* 'strongest, most powerful', *langst* 'longest', *crankest* 'weakest'.

Some adjectives have suppletive forms in the comparative and superlative. The most common ones are listed in Table 42:

Table 42. Irregular comparative and superlative forms for adjectives

positive	comparative	superlative
<i>goet</i> 'good'	<i>beter</i>	<i>best</i>
<i>cleine, klein</i> 'small'	<i>minre, mindre, mindre</i>	<i>minst</i>
<i>groot</i> 'big'	<i>meere, meerre</i>	<i>meest</i>

18.4.2. Adjective endings

Attributive adjectives in the comparative and superlative form take the same endings as adjectives in the positive. However, in those cases where the historically motivated adjective ending is *en* (i.e. accusative masculine singular, dative masculine/neuter singular, and dative plural), the usual ending for comparatives and superlatives is *e*. In (151), *scoenre man* 'a more handsome man' is in the accusative case:

- (151) *Si noit en sagen scoenre man.*
 they never neg.part. saw more.handsome man
 'They never saw a more handsome man.'

When used as a predicate, a comparative adjective usually ends in *e*.

18.5. Adverbs

Many Middle Dutch adverbs end in unstressed *e* in the positive, e.g. *langhe* 'for a long time', *lude* 'aloud', *stille* 'silently', *cume* 'barely'. Others end in a consonant or a stressed vowel, e.g. *wel* 'well', *heden* 'now, today', *weder* 'again', *vroe* 'early'. The ending *s*, originally used in adverbial expressions in the genitive case, also frequently indicates an adverb, e.g. *rechts* 'to the right', *algedaets* 'constantly'. Adverbs can occur in the comparative and the superlative, provided their meaning allows degrees of comparison.

In forming the comparative and the superlative of an adverb, the suffixes *er(e)* and *st* are used, e.g. *hogher* 'higher', *hoechst* 'highest'.

Some adverbs have suppletive forms in the comparative and superlative. The most common ones are listed in Table 43:

Table 43. Irregular comparatives and superlatives forms for adverbs

positive	comparative	superlative
<i>luttel, lettelt</i> 'little, few'	<i>min</i>	<i>minst</i>
<i>vele</i> 'much, often'	<i>mee, meer, meere</i>	<i>meest(e)</i>
<i>wel</i> 'well'	<i>bat, bet</i>	<i>best</i>
<i>slecht</i> 'bad'	<i>wers, wors</i>	<i>werst</i>

Note that the superlative *werst* is listed in only one grammar.

Chapter 19

Sister Bertken

19.1. Reading and textual analysis: Sister Bertken

Among the more curious medieval Dutch writers is the nun Sister Bertken (Bertha Jacobs). She was born in 1426 into a well-to-do family in Utrecht and entered a convent at the age of twenty-four. Approximately six years later she obtained permission from the bishop to be incarcerated in a small cell adjacent to the church of Utrecht. Bertken lived in this cell until her death in 1514. During those fifty-seven years, her daily activities consisted of attending church (which she could do from a window in her cell), praying, meditating, and writing. At certain times, she was available for consultation to the inhabitants of Utrecht, who could ask her to remember them in her prayers. Sister Bertken's living conditions were remarkably modest: she had no means of heating her cell, she never wore shoes, and her diet excluded all dairy products and meat. The only furniture in her cell consisted of a mattress, a desk, and a chair.

During the Middle Ages, it was not uncommon to find a recluse like Sister Bertken. This phenomenon originated in the East during the third or fourth centuries A.D. and gradually spread all over Europe. Eventually, guidelines for persons choosing this lifestyle were established. There was a religious ceremony at the incarceration during which the recluse vowed never to leave the cell except if required for medical care. Leaving the cell for any other reasons could result in excommunication.

Sister Bertken's literary legacy is not extensive. Two short prose treatises from her hand have survived, as well as a few of her songs. Her work was first published in Utrecht in the year 1516 by Jan Berntsz. A few years later, it was also published in Leiden and in Antwerp. The reading selection below consists of one of her songs, entitled "*Een ander leydeken*" [Another Song].

Een ander leydeken

- 1 *Mi quam een schoon geluit in mij[nen] oren,*
Mijn hert dat heeft hem op gerecht om vrolicheyt te horen.
Wye ihesus stem wil nemen waer,
Hi vint den vrede, dat weet voerwaer,
- 5 *Die men nyet en mach verstoren.*

- Ic heb ghehoert van wonderliker saken:
Die alle dinck ghescapen heeft, hi wilde hem selven maken
En werden een teder kindekijn;
Die heer in also crancken schijn
10 So woude hy ons ghenaken.*
- Dye suver min heeft crachtelic getogen,
Want god zijn hoghe mogentheyd so minlic heeft gheboghen,
Ende aen nam van eenre maget puer
Gheware menschelic natuer.
15 Hi woude voer ons doghen.*
- Nu willen wy vander sueticheit voert hooren,
Die heer als een cleijn kindekijn is vander maget geboren,
Coninc der coningen ende der heren heer,
God en mensch, dats wonder meer.
20 Het was langhe gheseyt te voren.*
- O reine maget ende moeder gods vercoren,
Onse heil ende ewige salicheit, de is wt u geboren.
Wi sijn wel hooch mit u verblijt,
Want ghi een veynster der genaden sijt,
25 Die lange was verloren.*
- Der engelen sanc was wonnentlic te horen,
Doe god als een cleyn kindekijn glorioselic weert geboren,
Met hoger claerheit ombevaen.
Dye moeder heeft hem gebeden aen,
30 Sijn duve, sijn wtvercoren.*
- Die reine maget is naerre bi gecomen,
Sy heeft met groter eerweerdicheit haren soon tot haer genomen,
Sy custen voer sinen heiligen mont;
Haer geest die wert ter selver stont
35 In nyeuwer vroeghe ghenomen.*
- Die moeder heeft haer kindekijn gewonden,
In snoden reynen doeckelkijn seer sachtelick gebonden.
Si heeft hem in een cribbe geleyt;
Alsoe den harden was toe gheseit,
40 Hebben sy den heer ghevonden.*

45 *Dat kindekijn heeft gescreyt met sinen ogen.
Doe wert dat meechdelike hert moederlic bewogen;
Haer reine borsten boot si terstont
Dat kindekijn voer sinen heylighen mont
Met sueten mededoghen.*

50 *Die heer heeft onse crancheit aengetogen
Om ons in ewiger ewicheit in glorien te verhogen.
Dit heeft zijn hoghe minne ghedaen.
Wien en sal dit niet ter herten gaen
Ende werden al bewoghen?*

55 *Het gaet al boven reden ende sinnen,
Hoe vast dat wi gedrucket zijn in Jhesus hert met minnen,
Dat moghen wi wel mercken openbaer,
Willen wi zijn wercken nemen waer
Van buten ende van binnen.*

60 *Wie ihesus min van binnen can ghesmaken,
Zijn hert dat sal hem opengaen ende grote vruechde maken.
Want ihesus is altijd bereit
Wt te storten zijn sueticheit,
Als hem die reyne[n] naken.*

65 *O milde heer, ick bidde u openbare,
Wilt van mi nemen dat herte mijn in dezen nyewen iare.
Ick ghevet u met allet sijn,
Ick en mach niet langher heeten mijn,
Het valt mi veel te sware.*

*Elke veers weder sanck
O Jhesu, oversuete kindekyn,
Ic begeer u algeheel te zijn,
Ic en mach niet langer heten mijn.*

- 1 *geluit:* nom. nt. sg. 'sound'
- 2 *oren:* dat. nt. pl. of *ore* 'ear'
- 3 *heeft hem op gerecht:* 'has lifted up'
- 4 *vrolicheyt:* acc. f. sg. of *vrolicheyt* 'cheerfulness, gaiety'
- 5 *horen:* inf. 'to hear'
- 6 *wye:* indef. rel. pron. 'whoever, who'
- 7 *stem:* gen. f. sg. of stem 'voice'
- 8 *nemen waer:* inf. *waernemen* (+ gen.) 'to observe, pay attention to'
- 9 *vrede:* acc. m. sg. of *vrede* 'peace'

- 5 *voerwaer*: adv. 'indeed, in truth'
 die: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *den vrede*)
 verstoren: inf. 'to destroy, shatter'
 6 *wonderliker*: adj. *wonderlijk* 'strange, surprising'
 saken: dat. f. pl. of *sake* 'matter, thing'
 7 *die*: indef. rel. pron. 'whoever, who'
 ghescapen: pp. of *sceppen* 'to shape, create'
 maken (refl.): inf. 'to change'
 8 *en* = *ende*
 teder: adj. *teder* 'delicate, tender'
 9 *also*: adv. 'such'
 crancken: adj. *cranc* 'weak, helpless'
 schijn: acc. m. sg. of *schijn* 'appearance, looks'
 10 *ghenaken*: inf. 'to approach'
 11 *suver* = *suyuer*
 min = *minne*
 crachtelic: adv. 'energetically, vigorously'
 12 *mogenthey*: acc. f. sg. of *mogenthey* 'power, authority'
 minlic: adv. 'lovingly, friendly'
 gheboghen: pp. of *bughen* 'to bend, incline'
 13 *aen nam*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *aen nemen* 'to adopt, accept'
 maget: dat. f. sg. of *maget* 'maiden, virgin'
 puer: adj. *puer* 'pure'
 14 *gheware*: adj. *ghewaer*, *gheware* 'true, genuine'
 menschelic: adj. *menschelic* 'human'
 15 *doghen*: inf. 'to suffer'
 16 *sueticheit*: dat. f. sg. *sueticheit* 'gentleness, sweetness'
 voert: adv. 'further, more'
 17 *als*: conj. 'as, like'
 19 *mensch*: nom. m. sg. 'human being'
 20 *was ... gheseyt*: pass., 'had been promised'
 langhe: adv. 'for a long time'
 21 *vercoren*: pp. of *verkiezen* 'to choose'
 22 *heil*: nom. nt. sg. 'salvation'
 ewige: adj. *ewich* 'eternal, everlasting'
 salicheit: nom. f. sg. 'salvation, bliss'
 wt = *ute*, *uut*
 23 *verblijt*: adj. 'pleased, delighted'
 24 *veynster*: nom. nt. sg. 'window'
 genaden: gen. f. sg. of *genade* 'grace, mercy'
 25 *die*: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *genade*)
 was verloren: pass., 'had been lost'
 26 *engelen*: gen. m. pl. of *engel* = *inghel*
 sanc: nom. m. sg. 'singing, song'

- 27 *was wonnentlic te horen*: 'was a delight to hear'
glorioselic: adv. 'in glory'
weert = *wert*
- 28 *ombevaen*: pp. of *ombevaen* 'to encircle, surround'
 29 *heeft hem gebeden aen*: 'has worshipped him'
 30 *duve*: nom. f. sg. of *duve* 'dove, pigeon'
wtvercoren: pp. of *wtverkiesen* 'to choose, select'
- 31 *naerre bi*: adv. 'nearer, closer'
 32 *eerweerdicheit*: dat. f. sg. of *eerweerdicheit* 'venerableness'
soon: acc. m. sg. of *soon* 'son'
- 33 *custen*: *custe* + *en*; *custe*: ind. 3rd sg. pret. of *cussen* 'to kiss';
en: cl. pron. 'him, it'
mont: acc. m. sg. of *mont* 'mouth'
- 34 *wert ... ghenomen*: pass., 'was taken'
ter selver stont: 'at the same time'
- 35 *vroechede*: dat. f. sg. of *vroechede* 'joy, gladness'
 36 *gewonden*: pp. of *winden* 'to wind, twist'
 37 *snoden*: adj. *snode*, *snoot* 'humble, poor'
doeckelkijn: dat. nt. pl. of *doeckelkijn* 'napkin, diaper'
seer: adv. 'very'
sachtelick: adv. 'softly, gently'
- 38 *cribbe* = *crebbe*
- 39 *harden*: dat. m. pl. of *harde* = *herde*
was toe gheseit: pass., 'was promised'
- 41 *gescreyt*: pp. of *screyen* 'to cry'
- 42 *wert bewogen*: pass., 'was moved'
meechdelike: adj. *meechdelijc* 'maidenly, virginal'
moederlic: adv. motherly, maternally'
- 43 *borsten*: acc. f. pl. of *borst* 'breast'
terstont: adv. 'immediately'
- 45 *sueten*: adj. *suete*, *suet* 'sweet'
mededoghen: dat. nt. sg. of *mededoghen* 'compassion'
- 46 *aengetogen*: pp. of *aentien* 'to put on'
crancheit: acc. f. sg. of *crancheit* 'weakness, feebleness'
- 47 *ewicheit*: dat. f. sg. of *ewicheit* 'eternity'
in glorien: 'in glory, in lustre'
verhogen: inf. 'to rejoice, elevate'
- 50 *werden ... bewoghen*: pass., 'be moved'
- 51 *boven reden ende sinnen*: 'beyond reason and senses'
- 52 *vast*: adv. 'strongly'
gedrucket zijn: pass., 'are pressed'
- 53 *openbaer*: adv. 'clearly, distinctly'
- 55 *van buten ende van binnen*: 'outside and inside'
- 56 *wie*: indef. rel. pron. 'whoever, who'

- van binnen*: 'from the inside'
ghesmaken: inf. 'to taste, enjoy'
 57 *opengaen*: inf. 'to open'
vruechde: acc. f. sg. of *vruechde* 'joy, gladness'
maken: inf., here: 'to provide'
 58 *altijt*: adv. 'always'
bereit: adj. 'ready, prepared'
 59 *wt te storten*: *wistorten* 'to pour out'
 60 *reyne[n]*: adj. *reyne*, *reyn* 'pure'
naken: ind. 3rd pl. of *naken* 'to approach'
 61 *milde*: adj. *milde*, *milt* 'merciful, charitable'
bidde: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *bidden* 'to pray, request'
 65 *het valt mi veel te sware*: 'It has become a burden to me'
 66 *veers*: gen. nt. sg. 'stanza, verse'
weder sanck: nom. m. sg. 'refrain'
 67 *oversuete*: adj. *oversuete* 'very sweet, very charming'
 68 *begeer*: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *begeren* 'to desire, wish'
algeheel: adv. 'completely'

19.2. Temporal demarcations in the history of the Dutch language

Dutch, the native language of approximately 20 million people in the Netherlands and in the northern part of Belgium, derives from the dialect of the Salian Franks. Historical linguists usually refer to the Salian dialect as Low Franconian. The history of the Dutch language is divided into three periods: (a) Old Dutch (Old Low Franconian), from the beginning of the eighth century to the beginning of the twelfth century; (b) Middle Dutch, from the twelfth century to the beginning of the sixteenth century; and (c) Modern Dutch, from the sixteenth century to the present. Of course, the temporal demarcations listed above are by approximation, and linguistic changes evolve over a long period of time.

The spread of Christianity in the Low Countries coincided with the formation of Old Dutch. Unfortunately, our knowledge of the oldest stages of Dutch is limited, since very few written documents have survived the ravages of time. Some Dutch names and glosses in Latin texts, one Old Dutch sentence (See 20.2), and the *Wachtendonck Psalter*, a collection of psalms in an eastern dialect which has been dated to the early tenth century, (See 20.3) are available. There are also records of some place and personal names.

By the beginning of the twelfth century, the language had already undergone most of the changes which are considered typical of Middle Dutch: The most important change concerned the weakening of vowels in weakly stressed final syllables, i.e. weakly stressed final syllables in Middle Dutch usually contain the neutral vowel schwa [ə], e.g. ODu. *hebban* 'to have' > MDu. *hebben* 'to have'. A second major change involved the dental fricative ODu. *th*, which became a voiced stop, e.g. ODu. *werthan* > MDu. *werden* 'to become'. A third change occurred as the sequence ODu. *al/ol* + dental consonant became MDu. *ou* + dental stop, e.g. MDu. *sout* 'salt', *gout* 'gold', *out* 'old'. Finally, ODu. *f* in initial position was voiced, e.g. ODu. *fallon* > MDu. *vallen* 'to fall'.

The Middle Dutch stage roughly covers four centuries, and a multitude of texts in the vernacular are available for that period. As a result, it has been possible to analyze the language of many literary texts and official documents. For the early Middle Dutch period, most of the texts available are of southern origin. It is only during the fifteenth century that a written tradition emerges in the North. As is evident from the reading passages in this book, "Middle Dutch" covers the language of the hagiography of Hendrik van Veldeke in a Limburgic dialect to the poetry of Sister Bertken from Utrecht, although approximately three hundred and fifty years separate their writings. Beyond any doubt, the language underwent many changes on the syntactical, morphological, phonological, and lexical level during that time. Therefore, the importance of dialect study for Middle Dutch cannot be underestimated.

The sixteenth century marked the transition from Middle Dutch to Modern Dutch. At that time, a shift in the center of gravity from the southern to the northern regions of the Low Countries occurred. The Fall of Antwerp in 1585 caused many members of the southern upper class to emigrate to Holland, where they settled in the larger cities. Especially Amsterdam was very popular. In Holland, the immigrants occupied responsible and high positions, thus leaving their southern stamp on the dialect of the North. In the cities, a more polished speech arose, which was used by the higher urban social circles. This language contained both Hollandic and southern characteristics. For example, one of the main differences between Middle and Modern Dutch, the diphthongization of MDu. *ū* and MDu. *ī* was introduced in this dialect through the influence of Brabantic. (Dialects of Brabant already display this feature by the end of the fourteenth century.) This *Hollands* is the language on which the present-day ABN, the *Algemeen Beschaafd Nederlands* (General Cultivated Dutch) of both the Netherlands and the northern part of Belgium is based. It embraces geographical variations in pronunciation, vocabulary, and syntax, yet, these do not impede mutual understanding of any speakers of ABN.

19.3. The passive

A passive construction allows for emphasis of certain constituents of a clause which would not receive such stress in the active voice. It is used as a device to accentuate the verb or the object or person undergoing the action expressed by the verb. It is especially convenient if the agent of the verb is unknown or irrelevant within the context, since it is not necessary to express the agency in a Middle Dutch passive construction.

In Middle Dutch, a passive construction is expressed by an auxiliary verb (*sijn*, *wesen* or *werden*) and the past participle of the main verb. If the agent of the action is expressed, it is usually introduced by the preposition *van*, which is usually translated into English as "by", as exemplified in (152):

- (152) *En uſent niemene, ende en*
 neg.part. worship nobody and neg. part.
wilt oec van niemene gheufent ſijn.
 want also by nobody aux. worshipped
 (10:11-12)
 'Do not worship anyone, and do not want to be worshipped by anyone.'

More examples of passive constructions are:

- (153) *Die heer als een cleijn kindekijn is*
 the Lord as a small child aux.
vander maget geboren. (19:17)
 from.the Virgin born
 'The Lord was born as a small child from the Virgin.'
- (154) *Doe god als een cleijn kindekijn*
 when God as a small child
glorioselc weert geboren. (19:27)
 in.glory aux. born
 'When God was born in glory as a small child.'
- (155) *Haer geest die wert ter selver stont*
 her spirit expl. aux. at.the same time
In nyewer vroechde ghenomen. (19:34-35)
 in new joy overcome
 'At the same time, her spirit was overcome by new joy.'
- (156) *Nochtan en wert van der godheiden*
 in.spite.of.this neg. part. aux. from the deity

Cristus *lichame* *nie* *ghesceiden.* (5:11)
 Christ's body never separated
 'In spite of this, Christ's body was never separated from the deity.'

- (157) *Werddi* *ghetoghen,*
 are.you tempted
Ghi sijt *bedroghen.* (10:19-20)
 you are deceived
 'If you were to be tempted, you would be deceived.'

19.4. The present participle

The present participle is formed by suffixing *de* to the infinitive of the verb, e.g. *wesende* 'being', *houdende* 'keeping'.

- (158) *Deuotelijck* *wesende* *inder* *kercken* (7:5)
 devout being in.the church
 'Being devout in church'

- (159) *In* *al* *haer* *doen* *houdende* *mate* (7:8)
 in all her actions keeping moderation
 'Keeping moderation in all her actions'

- (160) *Houdende* *haer* *eere* *stijf* *met* *trouwe* (7:13)
 holding her honor rigidly with fidelity
 'Adhering rigidly to her honor'

It was possible to use a present participle in conjunction with the verb *sijn*, *wesen* or *bliven* in order to express a continuous action, e.g.

- (161) *Al* *dat* *hi* *besittende* *is* *in* *dit* *leven*
 all which he possessing is in this life
 'All which he possesses (is possessing) in this life'

- (162) *Achilles bleef* *wakende* *in* *der*
 Achilles remained keeping.guard during the
nacht
 night
 'Achilles was keeping guard during the night.'

werden combined with a present participle denoted the beginning of an action, as in example (161):

- (163) *Ende* *worde* *minnende* *den* *jongen* *man*
 and would.become loving the young man
 (6:21)
 'And [she] would fall in love with the young man'

19.5. The use of the present and past participles as attributive adjectives

Present and past participles are often used as attributive adjectives. In that case, they take adjective endings as outlined in Chapter 7, e.g. *een bedruckte vrouwe* 'a saddened woman', *eenen breydel wel ghedaen* 'a well-made bridle', *moeder gods vercoren* 'mother of God chosen', *alle minnende* (adjective used as a noun) 'all those who love', *eyn gloyende yser* 'a glowing iron'.

Chapter 20

Jan van Ruusbroec (II)

20.1. Reading and textual analysis: Jan van Ruusbroec

This chapter introduces another excerpt from the hand of Jan van Ruusbroec (See Chapter 10). It is taken from his first work, *Het Rijke der Ghelieven* [The Kingdom of the Beloved], which was written while he was still living in Ruusbroec near Brussels. Therefore it must have been composed before 1343, the year in which Jan van Ruusbroec left for *Groenendael*. The author was not completely satisfied with this work, and it has been reported that he expressed regret that a copy of this treatise had been circulated without his knowledge.

In *Het Rijke der Ghelieven* Ruusbroec focuses on the seven gifts of the Holy Spirit. The seventh gift of the Holy Spirit is wisdom *de redene*, which enables one to know the mercy of God:

- 1 *Soe merct de/redene wel dat haer lief soe groot es, dat Hi na sire
wijs van hare noch van gheenre creatueren nemmermeer begrepen
werdt; soe hoghe, dat Hi nummermeer creatuerlijcker wijs herhaelt
en wert; soe eenvuldich, dat in Hem alle menichvuldicheyt inden*
5 *ende beghinnen moet. Ende Hi es eene schoonheyt die chiert
hemelrijcke ende eertrijcke. Ende Hi es een rijcdom daer alle
creatueren uut ghevloten sijn ende weselijc in bleven sijn. Ende Hi
es een eersamheyt hemelrijcs ende eertrijcs ende alre creatueren.
Ende Hi es een leven daer al dat in leeft, dat je ghewert ende*
10 *emmermeer sijn sal. Ende Hi es seghe daermen alle dinc in
verwint. Ende Hi es de crone daer die verwinnende mede ghecroont
werden. Ende Hi es ghesonde: die Hem vercrighet, Hi es vorweert
meer ghesenen. Ende Hi es vrede daer alle minnende in rasten.
Ende Hi es sekerheyt: die Hem vercrighet, hem en mach niet*
15 *ghebreken. Ende Hi es die zalicheyt, die ghevet dat ghebruyken.
Ende Hi es een troost die verblijdt de bedroefde. Ende Hi es
soetichheyt die doergheet de begherende. Ende Hi es vroude: in Hem
glorieren die minnende. Ende Hi es oerspronc der vrouwen: in Hem
versmelten die ghebrukende. Ende Hi es een jubel, dat es eene*
20 *vroude diemen niet ghewaerden en mach;/daer falieren sinne ende
crachte. Ende Hi es de loen daer wij alle na haken. Ende Hi es eene*

wellust die den mensche niewiczins ghedueren en laet. Ende Hi es
 viricheyt die alle minnende ontsteken ende verberren wilt. Ende Hi
 es die moghenthey die alle dinc bedwingen mach. Ende Hi es die
 25 Godheyt, die alle dinc vervullen mach. Ende Hi es die ewichheit,
 die alden tijt gheschapen hevet. Ende Hi es die goede die alle gaven
 gheven wilt.

- 1 *redene*: nom. f. sg. 'wisdom'
- 2 *wijs* = *wijse*
begrepen: pp. of *begripen* 'to embrace, understand'
- 3 *creatuerlijcker wijs*: 'as a living being'
nimmermeer: adv. 'never again'
herhaelt: pp. of *herhalen* 'to repeat, recover'
- 4 *eenvuldich*: adj. *eenvuldich* 'plain, simple'
menichvuldicheyt: nom. f. sg. of *menichvuldicheyt* 'multiplicity,
 variety'
inden: inf. 'to end'
- 5 *schoonheyt*: nom. f. sg. 'beauty'
die: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *eene schoonheyt*)
chier: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *chieren* 'to adorn, decorate'
- 6 *eertrijcke*: acc. nt. sg. of *eertrijcke* 'earth'
rijcdom: nom. m. sg. 'wealth'
daer ... uut: rel. adv. 'from which'
- 7 *ghevloten*: pp. of *vlieten* 'to flow'
weselijc: adv. 'essentially, in essence'
(daer) ... in: rel. adv. 'in which'
- 8 *eersamheyt*: nom. f. sg. 'respectability'
- 9 *dat*: indef. rel. pron. 'which'
ghewert: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *ghewerden* 'to become, be created'
- 10 *emmermeer*: adv. 'henceforth'
seghe: nom. m. sg. 'victory, triumph'
daermen ... in: *daer* + *men* *in*; *daer in*: rel. adv. 'in which'; *men*:
 pron. 'one'
- 11 *crone*: nom. f. sg. 'wreath, crown'
daer ... mede: rel. adv. 'with which'
- 12 *ghetroont*: pp. of *cronen* 'to crown'
ghesonde: nom. f. sg. 'good health'
die: indef. rel. pron. 'whoever'
- 13 *vercrighet*: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *vercrighen* 'to receive, gain'
vorweert meer: adv. 'in the future, from now on'
- 14 *ghenesen*: pp. of *ghenesen* 'to heal, restore to health'
daer ... in: rel. adv. 'in which'
- rasten*: ind. 3rd pl. pres. of *rasten* 'to rest'
- sekerheyt*: nom. f. sg. 'security, safety'

- die*: indef. rel. pron. 'whoever'
niet: 'nothing'
 15 *ghebreken*: inf. 'to miss, fail'
die: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *die zalicheyt*)
ghebruyken: acc. nt. sg. 'enjoyment, pleasure'
 16 *troost*: nom. m. sg. 'encouragement, solace'
die: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *een troost*)
verblijdt: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *verbliden* 'to gladden, delight'
bedroefde: pp. of *bedroeven* 'to afflict, distress'
 17 *soeticheyt* = *sueticheit*
die: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *soeticheyt*)
doergheet: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *doergaen* 'to run through, transfix'
begherende: pres. p. of *begheren* 'to desire, wish'
vroude: nom. f. sg. 'pleasure, delight'
 18 *glorieren*: ind. 3rd pl. pres. of *glorieren* 'to take pride, glory'
oerspronc: nom. m./nt. sg. 'source, origin'
 19 *versmelten*: ind. 3rd pl. pres. of *versmelten* 'to melt together, fuse'
ghebrukende: pres. p. of *ghebruken* 'to enjoy'
jubel: nom. m. sg. 'jubilation, ecstasy'
 20 *ghewaerden*: inf. 'to express'
falieren: ind. 3rd pl. pres. of *falieren* 'to be short, fail'
sinne: nom. m. pl. of *sin* 'comprehension, intellectual capacity'
 21 *crachte*: nom. f. pl. of *cracht* 'strength of mind, fortitude'
loen: nom. f. sg. 'guard-rail, rest'
haken: ind. 1st pl. pres. of *haken* = *haecken*
 22 *wellust*: nom. f. sg. 'delight, bliss'
die: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *eene wellust*)
niewerincs ghedueren en laet: 'never leaves (the person) alone'
 23 *viricheyt*: nom. f. sg. 'fervor, ardor'
die: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *viricheyt*)
ontsteken: inf. 'to ignite, kindle'
verberren: inf. 'to burn'
 24 *moghenthey*: nom. f. sg. 'power'
die: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *die moghenthey*)
bedwinghen: inf. 'to check, restrain'
die: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *die Godheyt*)
 25 *vervullen*: inf. 'to fulfill, accomplish'
eewicheyt: nom. f. sg. 'eternity'
 26 *die*: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *die eewicheyt*)
goede: nom. f. sg. 'kindness, goodness'
die: rel. pron. 'which' (antecedent is *die goede*)
gaven: acc. f. pl. of *gave* 'gift, donation'

20.2. The oldest Dutch sentence

Since written documentation of the oldest stages in the history of the Dutch language is so scarce, Kenneth Sisam's discovery of an Old Dutch sentence in 1931 was of great significance. Sisam found the sentence, which dates back to the eleventh century, on the back cover of an English manuscript in the Bodleian Library at Oxford. Soon thereafter the dialect of the sentence was identified as West Flemish. The sentence is often called the *probatio pennae* 'testing of the pen', since the scribe wrote it down in order to test his new quill. The sentence is:

*Hebban olla uogala nestas hagunnan hinase hi[c] [e]nda thu uu[at] [u]nbida[n]
[uu]e nu*

It means: 'All birds have begun their nests except for me and you. What are we still waiting for?' The sentence displays three features that disappeared in Middle Dutch: (i) the occurrence of full vowels in unstressed final syllables, e.g. *hebban* (MDu. *hebben* 'to have'); (ii) word initial ODu. *th* which became MDu. *d*, e.g. *thu* (MDu. *du* 'you'); (iii) *u* in closed syllables in front of nasal consonants, which became MDu. *o*, e.g. *hagunnan* (MDu. *begonnen* 'begun').

The *probatio pennae* has raised questions concerning its authorship, its origin, its meaning, its dialect, etc. It is interesting to note that the sentence is written together with its Latin equivalent: *Abent omnes volucres nidos inceptos nisi ego et tu quid expectamus nu[nc]*. Some scholars have read the Old Dutch sentence as a verse line of a love song. Others saw in it an emigrated monk's expression of homesickness for his native Flanders. The line has also been interpreted as a call to settlement in a monastic life. Finally it has been suggested that the line was an educated word-play in which a Latin and a Dutch sentence display similarities in both sound and meaning.

20.3. The Wachtendonck psaltery

Besides the *probatio pennae*, the *Wachtendonckse Psalmen* [Wachtendonck Psaltery] also provides some knowledge of the earliest stages of the Dutch language. This collection of psalms is named after the canon Wachtendonck of Liège, in whose possession it was discovered by Justus Lipsius (1547-1606). Lipsius carefully studied the manuscript and had a copy made of it. He estimated that the psalms were from the ninth century, although it now seems more probable that they were written during the early years of the tenth

century. Their dialect reveals many eastern characteristics, and the text probably originated in the border area between Dutch and German. The psalms are written in a language that is predominantly Low Franconian, although they also contain features of other dialects. It seems likely that the Wachtendonck Psalter is a Low Franconian copy of a Middle Franconian original. Unfortunately, the psalter as found by Lipsius is now lost. Incomplete sixteenth-century copies are all that is left of the psalms today.

20.4. Relative clauses and relative pronouns

Middle Dutch relative clauses are either descriptive and can be omitted without significantly altering the meaning of the sentence, or restrictive, insofar as they limit the meaning of the antecedent, and are essential to the meaning of the sentence.

English does not have a specific set of words used exclusively to introduce relative clauses. Rather, the question words "who" and "which" and the demonstrative "that" fulfill that function. Likewise, Middle Dutch also utilizes other parts of speech as relatives. Some are declined in order to agree in gender and number with the antecedent. The case of the relative pronoun is determined by its function within the dependent clause. Such relative pronouns are: *die*, *wie*, and *welc*. Pronominal adverbs (*daer* + preposition) may also introduce a relative clause, these cannot be declined.

20.4.1 The simple demonstrative *die*

When *die* is used as a relative pronoun, its inflectional pattern is identical to that of the simple demonstrative (See 3.6). However, some deviant forms are found: genitive masculine singular *diens* (frequently used in younger texts); dative singular and plural *die*; and dative neuter singular *dat*. Examples of *die* used as a relative pronoun are:

- (164) *Dat vers dat daer geschreuen steet*
 the verse which there written stands
Dat sprecht: "exurge domine". (4:22-23)
 expl. says exurge domine
 'The verse-line which is written there says: exurge domine.'

- (165) *Ende nieuwe cousen ende nieuwe scoen,*
 and new stockings and new shoes

Die die rudder an sal doen. (13:16-17)
 which the knight will.put.on

'And new stockings and new shoes, which the knight will put on.'

- (166) *Hi es die zalicheyt, die ghevet dat ghebruyken.*
 he is the salvation which gives the joy
 (20:15)

'He is salvation which provides joy.'

Sometimes, Middle Dutch manuscripts use the masculine singular forms of *die* regardless of the grammatical gender and number of the antecedent, as in (167) and (168):

- (167) *Die joncfrouwe dien hi behagede harde wale.*
 the maiden whom he pleased very well
 'The maiden whom he pleased a lot.'

- (168) *Haer dien hi minde als zijn lichame.*
 her whom he loved like his body
 'She whom he loved like his own body'

20.4.2. The interrogative pronoun *wie*

wie as a definite relative pronoun is rarely used in documents prior to the fourteenth century. Originally an interrogative pronoun, *wie* showed no gender and number distinctions. Moreover, it was seldom used in the nominative case as a relative pronoun. Gradually, feminine and plural forms based on the paradigm of the simple demonstrative *die* were introduced into the language. These new forms were used only for the relative pronoun, i.e. they never occurred when *wie* functioned as a question-word. Table 44 shows the paradigm of *wie* when used as a relative pronoun:

Table 44. *wie* 'who' as a relative pronoun

	singular masculine	singular feminine	singular neuter	plural all genders
N	<i>wie</i>	<i>wie</i>	<i>wat</i>	<i>wie</i>
A	<i>wien</i>	<i>wie</i>	<i>wat</i>	<i>wie</i>
D	<i>wien</i>	<i>wiere, wier</i>	<i>wien</i>	<i>wien</i>
G	<i>wes, wies</i>	<i>wiere, wier</i>	<i>wes, wies</i>	<i>wiere, wier</i>

wie is frequently used as an indefinite relative pronoun, i.e. when no noun or pronoun in the sentence can be identified as the antecedent. The following variants are also found: *so wie*, *so wie so*, *so wie dat*, *wie so*, *wie dat*. Indefinite relative pronouns are best translated into English as "whoever, whatever", as in (169) and (170):

- (169) *Wye* *ihesus* *stem* *wil* *nemen waer*,
 whoever Jesus's voice wants observe
Hi vint den vrede. (19:3-4)
 he finds the joy
 'Whoever is willing to observe Jesus's voice will find peace.'
- (170) *Wie* *ihesus* *min* *van binnen* *can* *ghesmaken*,
 whoever Jesus's love within can savor
Zijn hert dat sal hem opengaen ende
 his heart expl. will refl. open and
grote vruechde maken. (19:56-57)
 great joy provide
 'Whoever is able to savor Jesus's love within, his heart will open itself and provide great joy.'

20.4.3. *welc*

As a relative pronoun, *welc* usually takes adjective endings. It can be used as an adjective with a following noun, or in conjunction with the definite article. Examples of *welc* in relative clauses are:

- (171) *Inder stat van Colen was een jonghelinc*,
 in.the city of Cologne was a young.man
welke jonghelinc was edel van gheboorte.
 which young.man was noble by birth
 'In the city of Cologne there was a young man, who was noble by birth.'
- (172) *Thoeft es van .3. substancien ... ene van*
 the.head is of three substances one of
herssenen de welke siin march van den hoofde.
 brains which are marrow of the head
 'The head consists of three substances: ... one [consisting] of brains, which are the marrow of the head.'

If the antecedent is a collective noun in the singular, the relative pronoun may occur in the plural. Similarly, the relative pronoun may agree with the natural gender of the antecedent, rather than with its grammatical gender, e.g.

- (173) *Entie vader gaf hem twijff [nt.], die [f.] hi*
 and.the father gave him the.woman whom he
minde.
 loved
 'And the father gave him the woman whom he loved.'
- (174) *Seths geslachte [sg.], die [pl.] goet waren.*
 Seth's ancestry which good were
 'Seth's ancestry, which was good.'

20.4.4. Pronominal adverbs

A pronominal adverb (*daer* + preposition) could also be used to introduce a relative clause. Note that the preposition is frequently separated from *daer*:

- (175) *Scone psalmen dat sij songhen*
 beautiful psalms expl. they sang
Daer men gode mede vleet. (4:20-21)
 which one God with worships
 'They sang beautiful psalms with which one worships God.'
- (176) *Hi es de loen daer wij alle na haken*
 he is the rest which we all for yearn
 (20:21)
 'And He is the rest for which we all yearn.'
- (177) *Hi es vrede daer alle minnende in rusten*
 He is peace which all lovers in repose
 (20:13)
 'And He is the peace in which all lovers repose.'

dat may follow a relative pronoun or relative adverb and need not be translated into English, e.g.

- (178) *Die bisscop, die dat een deel van Mechelen*
 the bishop whom a part of Mechlin
toebehoorde
 belonged
 'The bishop, to whom a part of Mechlin belonged'

Correct English usage sometimes requires that a relative pronoun be added in the translation of a Middle Dutch complex sentence: Middle Dutch sometimes used *ende* 'and' to combine two clauses in which the second clause modified a noun phrase of the first clause, e.g.

- (179) *Het es een cnape van groten love*
 it is a boy of high repute
Ende seide hi soude tArturs hove varen.
 and said he would to Arthur's court go
 'He is a boy of high repute who said he would go to Arthur's court.'

It was also possible to link two sentences asyndetically, where English usage now requires a relative construction:

- (180) *Een berch, es Caucasus ghenomt*
 a mountain is Caucasus called
 'A mountain which is called Caucasus'
- (181) *Ik wille u tellen van twee vrienden,*
 I want you tell of two friends
waren ghesellen.
 were companions
 'I want to tell you about two friends who were companions.'

Chapter 21

Beatrijs

21.1. Reading and textual analysis: the *Beatrijs*-legend

During the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, worship of the Virgin Mary reached a climax all over Western Europe. Many legends of that time describe miracles performed by the Virgin Mary, and the anonymous story of the sacristine nun Beatrice is a splendid example of such a legend.

The young and pretty Beatrice has been a dutiful sacristine for several years in a well-known convent, but she has never forgotten her childhood sweetheart, whom she has passionately loved ever since the age of twelve. She arranges a secret meeting with this man and decides to run off and start a new life with him. Before leaving the convent, Beatrice places her habit, her shoes, and her keys on the altar of the Virgin Mary. Seven years of joy and happiness await her, until her lover abandons her. Then the former nun is forced into prostitution in order to provide food and shelter for herself and her two children. In spite of her sinful life, Beatrice prays faithfully to the Virgin Mary every night. After seven years of misery, she goes back to the town where the convent is located. Upon asking how people reacted to the flight of Beatrice, she is informed that the sacristine nun had never left the convent and that there was probably no better nun around the area. Beatrice is puzzled by this statement, and at the repeated urging of the Virgin Mary, who appears to her in her dreams, she returns to the convent, leaving her two children in the Virgin Mary's care. At her arrival, she finds everything exactly as she had left it fourteen years before. She assumes her responsibilities again and realizes that the Virgin Mary has performed all her duties during her absence. At the end of the legend, Beatrice goes to confession and repents of her sins. Her two children, it is said, later became monks.

This legend was popular in medieval Western Europe, and there are versions in other languages. It is included in Caesarius of Heisterbach's *Dialogus Miraculorum* [Dialogue of Miracles] (circa 1223) and *Libri Miraculorum Octo* [Eight Books of Miracles] (circa 1237), with which the Middle Dutch version displays the most affinities. The anonymous author of the Middle Dutch version portrayed the heroine with great psychological insight, and the style of the legend is captivating. Never does the reader's sympathy leave Beatrice. In all probability, the legend was written during the

first half of the fourteenth century. Only one copy is extant, and that is part of the *Hulthemse Manuscript* [Manuscript of Hulthem], which is dated to circa 1374.

In the excerpt below, Beatrice and her friend have just spent their first day together. They have arrived at a beautiful green meadow, and the young man suggests they partake of *der minnen spel* 'the game of love'. When Beatrice objects, the young man replies to her with the following words.

- 1 *Hi seide: "Lief, en belghet u niet.*
 Het dede venus, diet mi riet.
 God gheve mi scande ende plaghe
 Ochtic u emmermeer ghewaghe."
- 5 *Si seide: 'Ic vergheef u dan.*
 Ghi sijt mijn troest voer alle man
 Die leven onder den trone!
 Al levede absolon die scone
 Ende ic des wel seker ware
- 10 *Met hem te levене .m. iare*
 In weelden ende in rusten,
 In liets mi niet ghecusten.
 Lief, ic hebbe u soe vercoren,
 Men mocht mi dat niet legghen voren
- 15 *Dat ic uwes soude vergheten!*
 Waric in hemelrike gheseten
 Ende ghi hier ertrike,
 Ic quame tot u sekerlike! ...
 Ay, god, latet onghewroken
- 20 *Dat ic dullijc hebbe ghesproken!*
 Die minste bliscap in hemelrike
 En es hier ghere vrouwen ghelike;
 Daer es die minste soe volmaect,
 Datter zielen niet en smaect
- 25 *Dan gode te minnen sonder inde.*
 Al erdsche dinc es ellinde;
 Si en doeghet niet een haer
 Jeghen die minste die es daer.
 Diere om pinen die sijn vroet,
- 30 *Al eest dat ic dolen moet*
 Ende mi te groten sonden keren
 Dore u, lieve scone ionchere."
- 1 *belghet u: impv. 2nd pl. of belghen (refl.) 'to be angry'*
 2 *diet = die + et*
 3 *gheve: subj. I, 1st sg. of gheven 'to give'*

- 4 *plaghe*: acc. f. sg. of *plaghe* 'calamity, torment'
ocht: *ocht* + *ic*; *ocht*: conj. 'if'; *ic*: cl. pron. 'I'
ghewaghe: subj. I, 1st sg. of *ghewaghen* 'to mention'
 5 *vergheef*: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *vergeven* 'to forgive'
 6 *voer alle man*: 'above all men'
 7 *trone*: dat. m. sg. of *trone* 'throne, firmament'
 8 *levede*: subj. II, 3rd sg. of *leven* 'to live'
 9 *seker*: adj. *seker* (+ gen.) 'sure, certain'
ware: subj. II, 1st sg. of *wesen* 'to be'
 10 *m.*: num. 'one thousand'
 11 *weelden*: dat. f. sg. of *weelde* 'luxury, bliss'
rusten: dat. f. sg. of *ruste* 'calm, rest'
 12 *in liets mi niet ghecusten*: 'I would not be pleased with it.'
 14 *mocht*: subj. II, 3rd sg. of *moghen* 'to be able, may'
legghen voren: inf. 'to suggest, lay a proposal before'
 15 *soude*: subj. II, 1st sg. of *sullen* 'shall, will'
vergheten: inf. (+ gen.) 'to forget'
 16 *waric*: *ware* + *ic*; *ware*: subj. II, 1st sg. of *wesen* 'to be'; *ic*: cl. pron. 'I'
 18 *quame*: subj. II 1st sg. of *comen* 'to come'
sekerlike: adv. 'certainly, surely'
 19 *ay*: interj. 'oh!'
latet onghewroken: 'let it go unavenged'
 20 *dullijc*: adv. 'foolishly'
ghesproken: pp. of *spreken* 'to speak'
 22 *ghelike*: adj. *gelike* (+ dat.) 'equal, similar'
 23 *volmaect*: adj. (pp.) 'perfect'
 24 *datter* = *dat* + *der*
smaect: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *smaken* (+ dat.) 'to please'
 25 *inde*: acc. n./m. sg. of *inde* 'end'
 26 *erdsche*: adj. *erdsch* 'worldly, earthly'
ellinde: nom. f./nt. sg. 'misery, distress'
 27 *doeghet*: ind. 3rd sg. pres. of *doeghen* 'to avail, be good'
niet een haer: 'not at all'
 28 *jeghen*: prep. 'compared to'
 29 *diere om*: *die* + (e)*re om*
pinen: ind. 3rd pl. pres. of *pinen* 'to exert oneself'
 30 *eest*: *es* + *et*
dolen: inf. 'to err, wander'
 31 *te*: prep. 'towards'
mi ... keren: inf. *keren* (refl.) 'to turn around, go'
moet: ind. 1st sg. pres. of *moeten* 'may, shall'

- 32 *dore*: prep. 'because of, for the sake of'
 lieve: adj. *lief* 'dear, beloved'
 ionchere: nom. m. sg. 'young man, youth'

21.2. The influence of French

Although there is evidence that French had also influenced the Dutch language at an earlier stage, this is increasingly the case during the Middle Dutch period, when a large number of French loan words and loan translations from French were introduced into the language. French influence was strongest in the South, especially in Flanders. However, the North did not remain untouched. Several factors contributed to the adoption of many French words and expressions in Dutch: the location of Flanders on the Dutch-French language border, the allegiance owed by Flanders to the French king, and the fact that French was considered prestigious as the language spoken by the upper Flemish nobility. Hence, the Counts of Flanders had French-speaking writers in residence: Chrétien de Troyes, for example, stayed at their court for some time. The crusades and other military expeditions which French and Flemish knights undertook together also increased the exposure to the French language and culture. The interest in the French culture can be observed in the widespread popularity of chivalric romances which originated in France. Many literary monuments in the Dutch language were adapted or translated from French, e.g. *Floris ende Blancefloer* [Floris and Blancefloer] or *Ferguut*. Finally, it must be noted that the wealthy Flemish cities had become international centers of trade, where French was often heard, and where many merchants were fluent in both Dutch and French. Hence, it is not surprising that loan words and loan translations are mostly terms that pertain to chivalry or a luxurious lifestyle: e.g. *pallas* 'palace', *ridder* 'knight', *artsoen* 'saddletree', *aventure* 'adventure', *tapijt* 'carpet', *coverture* 'blanket, upper garment', *delijt* 'delight', *fazant* 'pheasant', *patrijs* 'partridge', *taart* 'cake', *maisniede* 'courtly household', *kamenier* 'waiting-woman'. Many verbs which end in *ieren*, *eren* were also borrowed from French, e.g. *faliëren* 'to be short, fail', *glorieren* 'to glory, revel', *grongieren* 'to growl, snarl'. It is highly probable that the vast majority of the loan words never entered the language of the less privileged population, especially in the countryside. This also explains why they enjoyed only a relatively short life span in the history of the Dutch language.

The large impact of French on medieval Flemish society is also apparent in the domain of the civil bureaucracy, where the use of Latin had become increasingly impractical. Official documents were more frequently written in French or Dutch, so that by the last quarter of the thirteenth century, almost all official documents in Ypres, for example, were written in

French. However, nearly all official texts of Bruges for the same period were in Dutch. The oldest available non-literary documents in Dutch are from Flanders and date from the middle of the thirteenth century.

21.3. The subjunctive

Each Middle Dutch verb has two forms in the subjunctive mood: the subjunctive I (present subjunctive), which is formed from the infinitive stem of the verb, and the subjunctive II (preterit subjunctive), which is based on the preterit stem of the verb. The reading passage accompanying this chapter contains several verbs in the subjunctive mood, e.g. subj. I: *God gheve* 'may God give'; subj. II: *ic ... ware* 'I would be', *ic quame* 'I would come', *al levede* [*hi*] 'even if [he] were alive'.

21.3.1. The subjunctive I

The subjunctive I consists of the infinitive stem of the verb followed by a person/number ending. The person/number endings for the subjunctive are indicated in Table 45:

Table 45. The person/number endings for the subjunctive

	singular	plural
first person	<i>e</i>	<i>en</i>
second person	<i>(e)s</i>	<i>(e)d</i>
third person	<i>e</i>	<i>en</i>

Table 46 exemplifies the conjugation pattern of a strong and a weak verb in the subjunctive I:

Table 46. *swemmen* 'to swim' and *maken* 'to make, do': subjunctive I

<i>swemmen</i> 'to swim'	<i>maken</i> 'to make, do'
<i>ic swemme</i>	<i>ic make</i>
<i>du swemmes, swems</i>	<i>du makes, maecs</i>
<i>hi, si, het swemme</i>	<i>hi, si, het make</i>

<i>swemmen</i> 'to swim'	<i>maken</i> 'to make, do'
<i>wi swemmen</i>	<i>wi maken</i>
<i>ghi swemmet, swemt</i>	<i>hi, si, het maket, maect</i>
<i>si swemmen</i>	<i>si maken</i>

A comparison between the indicative present tense and the subjunctive I shows that differences occur only in the third person singular, e.g. ind. pres. *hi, si, het swemmet, swemt* vs. subj. I *hi, si, het swemme*.

If the infinitive stem ends in a vowel or a diphthong, the person/number ending *e* does not appear, e.g. *hi, si, het doe* (inf. *doen* 'to do');

Table 47 indicates the subjunctive I forms attested for preterit-present verbs:

Table 47. Subjunctive I forms of preterit-present verbs

infinitive	subjunctive I, first singular
<i>weten</i> 'to know'	<i>ic wete</i>
<i>dorren</i> 'to dare'	<i>ic dorre, derre, durre</i>
<i>dorven</i> 'to need'	<i>ic dorve, derve, durve</i>
<i>connen</i> 'to be able, can'	<i>ic conne, cunne</i>
<i>onnen</i> 'to grant'	<i>ic onne, anne</i>
<i>sullen, selen</i> 'shall, will'	<i>ic sulle, sele</i>
<i>moghen</i> 'to be able, may'	<i>ic moghe</i>
<i>moeten</i> 'may, shall'	<i>ic moete</i>

The subjunctive I forms of the verb *zijn* 'to be' differ from the indicative present in the three persons of the singular.: *ic si; du sijs; hi, si, het si;*

21.3.2. The subjunctive II

The subjunctive II forms of weak verbs, irregular weak verbs, and preterit-presents are identical to their indicative preterit forms. Strong verbs display differences between the subjunctive II and the indicative preterit tense. The person/number endings for the subjunctive are suffixed to the third principal part of the strong verb. The person/number endings for the subjunctive are listed in Table 45.

The paradigms in Table 48 illustrate the conjugation pattern of a weak verb (*leven* 'to live'), a strong verb (*nemen* 'to take'), and a preterit-present verb (*weten* 'to know') in the subjunctive II:

Table 48. *leven* 'to live', *nemen* 'to take', *weten* 'to know': subjunctive II

infinitive <i>leven</i>	infinitive <i>nemen</i>	infinitive <i>weten</i>
<i>ic levede, leefde</i>	<i>ic name</i>	<i>ic wiste</i>
<i>du levedes, leefdes</i>	<i>du naems, names</i>	<i>du wistes</i>
<i>hi, si, het levede, leefde</i>	<i>hi, si, het name</i>	<i>hi, si, het wiste</i>
<i>wi leveden, leefden</i>	<i>wi namen</i>	<i>wi wisten</i>
<i>ghi levede, leefdes</i>	<i>ghi naemt, namet</i>	<i>ghi wist</i>
<i>si leveden, leefden</i>	<i>si namen</i>	<i>si wisten</i>

The subjunctive II of strong verbs differs only in the first and third person singular from the indicative preterit forms, e.g. ind. pret. *ic nam, hi, si, het nam* vs. subj. II *ic name, hi, si, het name*;

In younger texts, the person/number ending *e* is often dropped. For example, in the text at the beginning of this chapter, one finds subjunctive II *men mocht*.

21.3.3. The use of the subjunctive in Middle Dutch

Generally speaking, the subjunctive is the mood of the verb which expresses that a state or action is unreal, desirable, presumed, or reported. The indicative mood, on the contrary, relates a state or fact that is directly attested, proven, and which corresponds to reality. A subjunctive verb form can occur in a main or in a dependent clause. However, since subjunctive and indicative forms are frequently identical, it may be impossible to determine which mood was intended by the writer.

The subjunctive mood of the verb may express:

(i) a wish:

- (182) *Soe hulpe mi God uut alre noet.* (17:30)
 so help me God in all danger
 'May God help me in all danger.'

- (183) *Ons Here moete di behouden.* (17:33)
 our Lord would.have.to you watch.over
 'May our Lord watch over you.'

(ii) an exhortation:

- (184) *Men slaese doot!*
 one slays.them dead
 'Let them be slain (to death).'

- (185) *Varen wi herberghen in den casteel.*
 Let.us.go stay.overnight in the castle
 'Let us stay overnight in the castle.'

(iii) a reported statement or a reported question:

- (186) *Hi rekende dat hi ware mijn oem. (12:1)*
 he figured that he was my uncle
 'He figured that he was my uncle.'

- (187) *Ende dede Odolyas verstaen,*
 and let Odolyas understand
Datter een bode waer ghecomen.
 that.there a messenger had.come
 (15:13-14)
 'And let Odolyas know that a messenger had arrived.'

(iv) the goal or intent of an action:

- (188) *Si ontboot him dat hi quame*
 she summoned him that he would.come
Ende enen dienre mit him name. (15:26-27)
 and a servant with him would.take
 'She summoned him so that he would come and bring along a servant.'

(v) uncertainty or doubt, e.g.

- (189) *Sine jongers, die twijfelhede hadden*
 his disciples who doubts had
oft dat Cristus ware.
 whether that Christ would.be
 'His disciples, who doubted whether that was Christ.'

- (190) *Hem twifelde waer hi gevloen ware.*
 him (D) doubted where he had.fled
 'He doubted where he had fled.'

(vi) a hypothetical or conditional situation:

- (191) *Seidi haer sijn hoghe gheslachte,*
 told.you her his high lineage
Ende dan Venus in haer wrachte,
 and then Venus in her worked
Ende worde minnende den jongen man,
 and would.become loving the young man
Soe mochte si hem segghen dan
 then might she him tell then
Hoe dat hi ware comen hier. (6:19-23)
 how he had.come here
 'If you told her about his noble lineage, and Venus worked in her,
 and [she] fell in love with the young man, she might tell him how
 he had come here.'

- (192) *Waric in hemelrike gheseten*
 had.I in heaven sat
Ende ghi hier ertrike,
 and you here earth
Ik quame tot u sekerlike! (21:16-18)
 I would.come to you certainly
 'If I were in Heaven and you here on earth, I would certainly come
 to you!'

A subjunctive could be paraphrased by means of an auxiliary verb (*moghen, sullen, moeten, laten*) and an infinitive, e.g.

- (193) *Jc soude te houe sijn ghegaen. (8:8)*
 I would to court have.gone
 'I would have gone to court'
- (194) *Hi soudem siere suster gheven. (16:8)*
 he would.him his sister give
 'He would give him his sister (in marriage).'

Index

- Abbey of Groenendael 84, 171
Abele Spelen 2, 84
accusative 26
adjective 56
adverb 160
adverbial phrase 30
al 59
Anthonis de Roovere 92
apocope 8
assimilation 13
auxiliary verb 89, 110, 142, 151, 168
Beatrijs 2, 180
Beatrijs van Nazareth 153
Blome der Doecheden 131
Caesarius of Heisterbach 180
Chrétien de Troyes 120, 183
clitics 14, 76
comparative 158, 160
compound sentences 64
conjunction 64, 72
consonants 4, 10
coordination 64
dative 44
De Gheestelike Brulocht 84
definite article 32
demonstrative 32
Der Leken Spieghel 40
Der Minnen Loep 131
devoicing 9
dialects 155
Dialogus Miraculorum 180
Die Brabantsche Yeesten 40
Diederic van Assenede 18
diminutive 53
diphthongs 6
Dirck Potter 131
doen 144
Eduard de Dene 92
elc 67
Elcerlyc 2, 54
Eneit 2, 34
epenthetic *d* 17
Esmoreit 48
expletive words 37
Fergus 120, 146
Ferguut 2, 120, 146
first consonant shift 123
Floris ende Blancefloer 18
Franks 134, 149
Frisians 134
future tense 151
genitive 80
Germanic languages 116
gerund 145
ghe- 110
Gloriant 48
Guillaume le Clerc 120
Hadewijch 2, 189
Hendrik Pomerius 84
Hendrik van Veldeke 2, 34
Heroides 131
Het Rijcke der Ghelieven 84, 171
Hulthemse Manuscript 48, 181
Immram Maelduin 69
imperative 90
impersonal construction 42
indefinite article 33
Indo-European languages 104
influence of French 183
interrogative adverb 107
interrogative pronoun 107
irregular weak verbs 118
Jacob van Maerlant 40, 113
Jan Berntsz. 161
Jan van Boendale 40

- Jan van Ruusbroec 84, 171
Karel ende Elegast 2, 138
Karl Meinet 138
 language border 149
Lanseloet van Denemarken 48
legghen 98, 110
Lex Salica 1
Li Plaid 61
Libri Miraculorum Octo 180
Lof vanden Heilighen Sacramente
 92
 Malbergse Glossen 1
Mariken van Niemeghen 2, 54
Mellibeus 131
men 78
Metamorphoses 131
Navigatio Sancti Brendani 69
 negation 95
 nominative 26
 nouns 22, 23, 31, 46, 52, 53
 numeral 192
 orthography 10
ou + dental stop 17
 Ovid 131
 passive voice 168
 past participle 110, 127, 135,
 141
 past perfect tense 142
 Penninc 113
Perceval 120
 personal pronoun 65, 75
 positive 158
 possessives 67, 79
 preposition 51
 present participle 145
 present perfect tense 142
 present tense 98
 preterit tense 89, 108, 118, 127,
 135, 141
 preterit-present 149
probatio pennae 174
 pronominal adverb 51
 Rederijkerskamer 2, 54, 92
Refereyn Amoureux 92
 reflexive pronoun 79
 relative clauses 175
Reynaert II 101
Reynardus Vulpes 101
Rhetoricae Wercken 92
Roman de Renard 61
 Saxons 134
segghen 98, 110
 semivowels 6
 separable prefix 111
Seven Manieren van Minnen 152
sijn 144
Sint Servaes Legende 2, 34
 Sister Bertken 161
 stress 9
 strong verbs 125, 127, 135, 141,
 142
 subject (absence of) 43
 subject 42
 subjunctive I 184
 subjunctive II 185
 subordination 71
 superlative 158, 160
 syllable structure 8
 syncope 8
 temporal demarcations 166
Testament van een Goede Vrouwe
 55
Van .vii. Trappen in den Graed der
 Gheesteleker Minnen 84
Van den Winter ende van den
 Somer 48
Van Sente Brandane 69
Vanden Levene ons Heren 25
Vanden Vos Reynaerde 2, 61,
 101
 Vostaert 113
 vowel lengthening 9
 vowels 6
Wachtendonckse Psalmen 1, 174
Wachtendonckse Psalmen 1, 174
Walewein 113
 weak verbs 108
 Willem 61

222 Index

willen 151

word order 29, 37, 42, 64, 72,
88, 95, 106



Hans Henrich Hock

Principles of Historical Linguistics

Second Edition. Revised and updated 1991 (first edition 1986).

22,8 x 14,8 cm. XIV, 706 pages. With 18 illustrations.

Paperback. DM 68,-

ISBN 3-11-012962-0

It is the widespread use of **Principles of Historical Linguistics** in university linguistics courses that has prompted this revised and updated edition.

This book provides in up-to-date form an understanding of the principles of historical linguistics and the related fields of comparative linguistics and linguistic reconstruction. In addition, it provides a very broad exemplification for the principles of historical linguistics.

In this second edition, the bibliography has been significantly expanded and updated. Revisions and changes cover both matters of content and presentation as well as the correction of misprints that are not self-correcting and factual errors that were contained in the first edition. Some of the corrections have been made in the text itself, others in the Notes section.

mouton de gruyter

Berlin • New York

